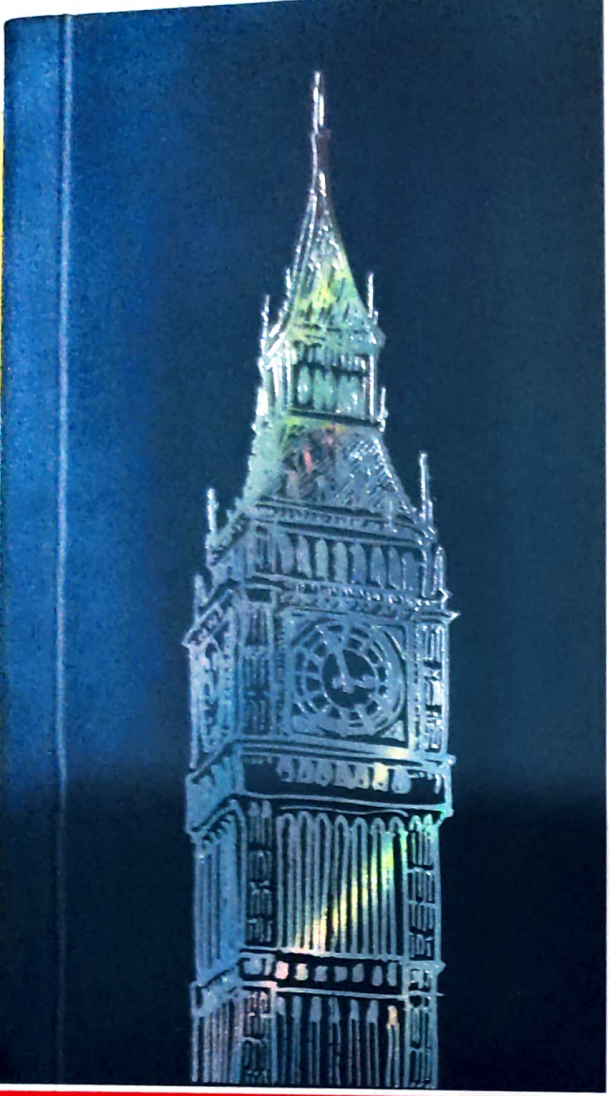


EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

الصف الثالث الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

ENGLISH

mr.salah abdelsalam

التطبيق التفاعلى للتعليم عن بعد

معاك
Ma3ak App

3rd Prep.
2022
FIRST TERM

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

ENGLISH

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing,publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

3rd Prep.
2022
FIRST TERM

A tour in your book

How to use this book كيف تستخدم هذ الكتاب

١ الشرح

- شرح مبسط لكل الدروس بالصور التوضيحية.
- عرض شامل لكل المفردات. القواعد والوظائف اللغوية.
- مراجعة على الوحدة.
- أهم النقاط (موضوع اختبار) في كل وحدة.
- مهارة الكتابة في نهاية كل وحدة لإتقان مهارة الكتابة.
- إجابات الموضوعات الإنشائية فى نهاية الكتاب.
- كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
- برنامج معاك التطبيق التفاعلى للتعلم عن بعد

٢ التقييم

- تدريبات متنوعة على كل جزئية في الدرس.
- تدريبات على كل درسين.
- تدريبات على كل وحدة.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف على كل وحدة.
- تدريبات لتنمية المهارات العقلية.
- التقييم الذاتي على كل وحدة.
- ورقة بحثية على كل وحدة.
- تدريبات بعد كل ثلاثة وحدات.
- تقييمات تراكمية على الوحدات.

٣ اتقن منهجك بطريقتك

Master your term

- شرح مبسط لكل درسان على حده متبوعا بتدريب مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب.

التقييمات الشهرية:

- اختبارات مصغرة على كل وحدة مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.
- اختبارات مصغرة على كل وحدتان مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.
- اختبارات مصغرة تراكمية مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.
- اختبارات مصغرة على كل ثلاث وحدات مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.

٤ المتابعة اليومية

برنامج معاك التطبيق التفاعلى للتعلم عن بعد.

- المتابعة اليومية للدرس في نهاية الملحق.
- المتابعة الشهرية للوحدات بعد كل ثلاثة وحدات (كل وحدة على حدة).
- متابعة مهارة الكتابة فى نهاية الوحدة.
- متابعة المهارات اللغوية (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات).
- متابعة القواعد اللغوية (ملحق المعاصر للقواعد اللغوية).
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

كيفية استخدام التطبيق

١

قُم بتنزيل التطبيق من

GET IT ON Google Play

٢

قُم بإنشاء الحساب الخاص بك

٣

أدخل كود الشخص "الموجود فى ظهر الغلاف" أو امسح علامة الباركود من خلال التطبيق

حساب طالب

- شرح الدروس بأحدث وسائل الإيضاح.
- اختبارات وامتحانات تفاعلية.
- تقارير و إحصائيات.
- اسأل المحاضر - الامتحان.
- ألعاب و أنشطة تعليمية.
- مزايا متعددة طوال العام.

حساب ولى أمر

- تابع مستوى أولادك من خلال تقارير أنشطتهم على التطبيق.
- تعرف على كل جديد فى العملية التعليمية.

حساب معلم

- تواصل مع مجموعة من طلابك وأرسل لهم مواد تعليمية واختبارات خاصة بك.
- قيم مستوى طلابك من خلال متابعة أنشطتهم وتواصلهم المباشر معك.

استراتيجيات المذاكرة المناسبة لارتقاء هرم بلوم

يوضح هرم بلوم أن كل مستوى معرفي يعتمد على المستويات التي تسبقه ويلزم لتحقيق التعلم العميق الوصول إلى المستويات العليا من التفكير ويتم ذلك بالتمكن أولا من المستويات الدنيا من التفكير.

وفيما يلي بعض استراتيجيات المذاكرة المناسبة التي تمكنك من تحقيق هدف كل مستوى.

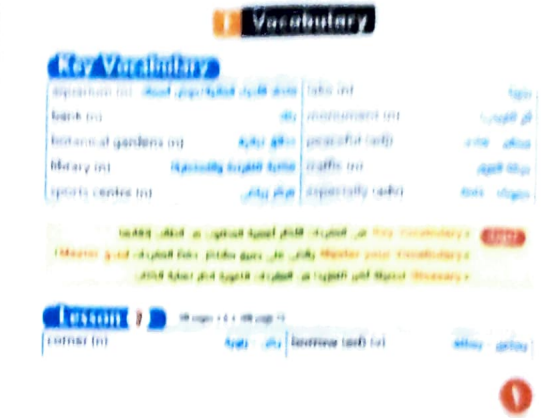
تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية

اقترح هذا التصنيف العالم بنيامين بلوم، ثم تم تحديثه ليشمل ستة مستويات معرفية متدرجة في شكل هرمي من الأبسط إلى الأرقى كالتالي:

التذكر ← الفهم ← التطبيق ← التحليل ← التقويم ← الإبداع

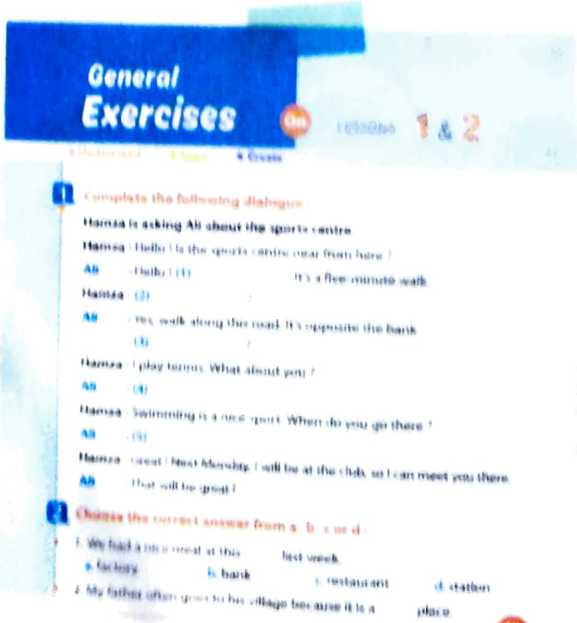
النموذج الحديث لهرم بلوم

Guidebook

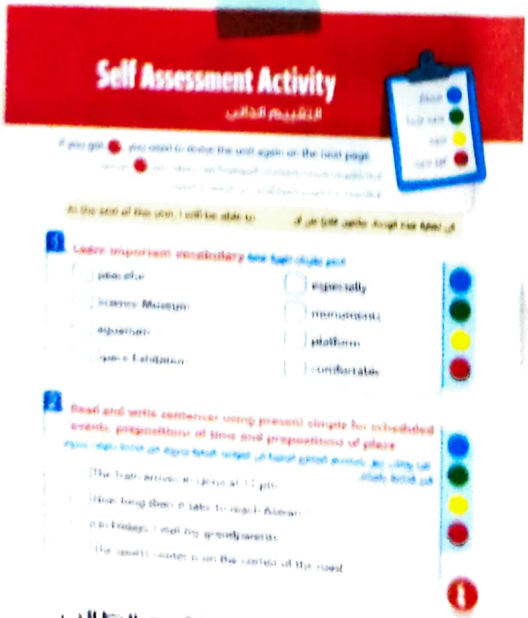


- عرض للمفردات اللغوية.
- عرض شامل لنصوص القراءة والاستماع.
- تدريبات متنوعة على المفردات اللغوية.

عرض شامل للقواعد اللغوية مع أمثلة متنوعة عليها تساعدك على دراسة القواعد اللغوية، مع تدريبات متنوعة على القواعد اللغوية.



تدريبات على كل درسين

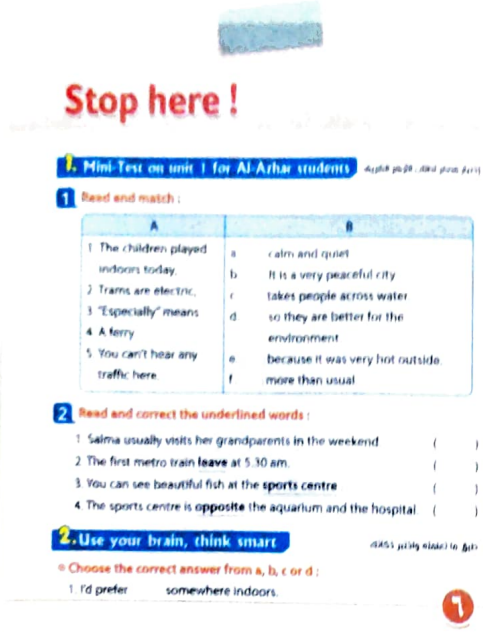


جزء الهدف منه هو تقييم الطالب لنفسه

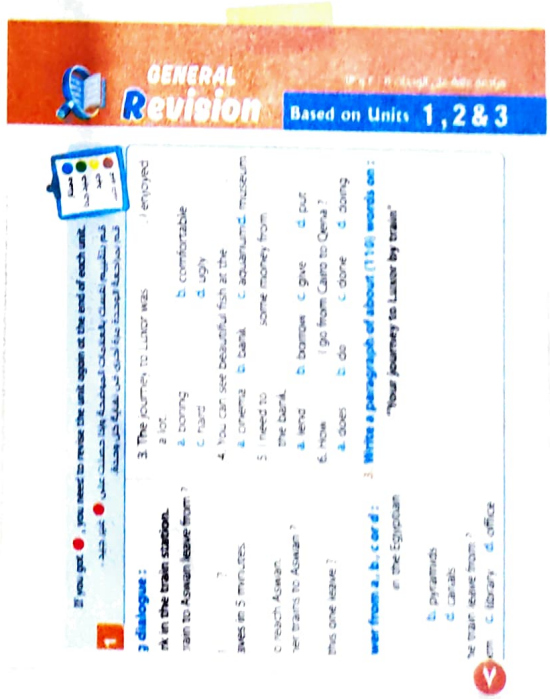
مراجعة على الوحدة تشتمل على أهم :

١. المفردات اللغوية.

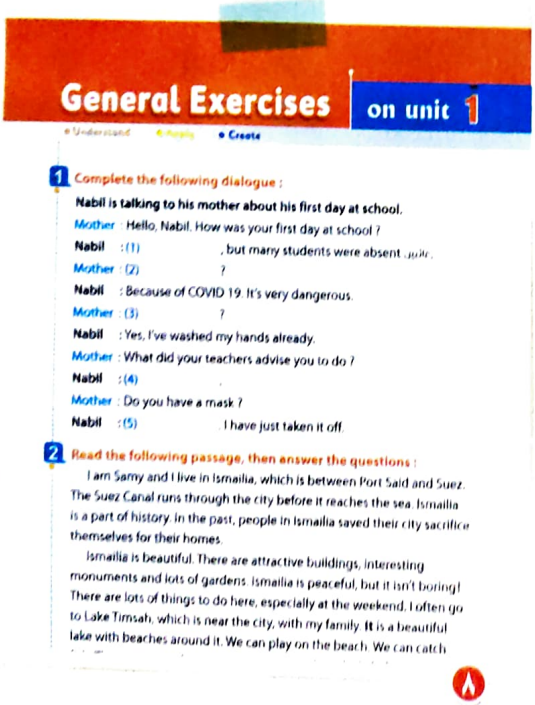
٢. القواعد اللغوية والوظائف اللغوية.



- اختبار مصغر لطلاب الازهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك.



اختبار مصغر على كل وحدة



تدريبات على الوحدة

Contents

	page
Check your English	11
Unit 1 Around town	15
Unit 2 Let's go shopping	75
Unit 3 My community	133
Review A	190
Unit 4 Have you ever travelled by plane ?	196
Unit 5 Young role models	249
Unit 6 What's wrong ?	304
Review B	364

Check your English

WB pages 70 and 71

1 Complete the questions with these words.

a lot of - how to - if - located - mustn't - quietly - used to - which

1. What ..... you do in an exam ?
2. What should you do ..... you feel ill at school ?
3. What do you call someone who knows ..... paint very well ?
4. Which city is ..... on the Suez Canal ?
5. Who ..... think that an animal's eye helped blind people ?
6. What fast food has ..... fat in it ?
7. What do you call the material ..... people often use to make clothes ?
8. In which building do people usually sit and read ..... ?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers.

a. [ ] cotton
b. [ ] the Ancient Egyptians
c. [ ] talk loudly
d. [ ] Port Said
e. [ ] a library
f. [ ] pizza
g. [ ] You should tell the teacher.
h. [ ] an artist

3 Listen and check your answers to exercises 1 and 2.

Listening

Narrator : 1
Speaker 1 : What mustn't you do in an exam ?
Speaker 2 : (c) talk loudly

Narrator : 2
Speaker 1 : What should you do if you feel ill at school ?
Speaker 2 : (g) You should tell the teacher.

Narrator : 3
Speaker 1 : What do you call someone who knows how to paint very well ?
Speaker 2 : (h) an artist.

Narrator : 4

Speaker 1 : Which city is located on the Suez Canal ?

Speaker 2 : (d) Port Said.

Narrator : 5

Speaker 1 : Who used to think that an animal's eye helped blind people ?

Speaker 2 : (b) the Ancient Egyptians.

Narrator : 6

Speaker 1 : What fast food has a lot of fat in it ?

Speaker 2 : (f) pizza.

Narrator : 7

Speaker 1 : What do you call the material which people often use to make clothes ?

Speaker 2 : (a) cotton.

Narrator : 8

Speaker 1 : In which building do people usually sit and read quietly ?

Speaker 2 : (e) a library.

4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes.

1. As we walk into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.

   As we were walking into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.

2. My sister bought a cotton, new, pretty dress.

   .....

3. Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown one.

   .....

4. Look at those dark clouds ! I think it is raining soon.

   .....

5. Hundreds of fish caught by the fishermen every week.

   .....

5 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. **In the foreground, I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.**

2. A : Good morning. How can I help you ?
   B : Hello. Can you tell me what time the museum opens ?
   A : Of course. It opens at 9 am.
   B : Can I buy tickets there ?
   A : Certainly or you can buy them online.

3. **Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready, serve it with salad.**

4. A : Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening ?
   B : Thanks Sara. What time should I come ?
   A : About seven.
   B : **Shall I bring anything ?**
   A : **Could you bring some orange juice ?**
   B : Of course. See you later.

5. A : Can I help you ?
   B : Yes. I like this red dress. Could I try it on ?
   A : Of course. The changing room is there.
   B : Does it fit ?
   A : No. Do you have a smaller size ?
   B : We don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.
   A : Thanks. I'll take it.

1. The boy is ..... .
   a. describing a photo
   b. selling clothes
   c. going to the shops
   d. buying something

2. The man is ..... .
   a. buying tickets at a museum
   b. helping a woman
   c. asking for information on the phone
   d. describing a visit to a museum yesterday

3. The woman is ..... .

a. making a salad
b. eating lunch
c. saying how to make a salad
d. saying how to make an omelette

4. Sara is ..... .

a. cooking food for Leila
b. inviting Leila to her house
c. making a film
d. going to Leila's house this evening

5. The woman in the shop ..... .

a. buys a red dress
b. wants a larger dress
c. doesn't buy a dress
d. buys a blue dress

6 Read the text, then answer the questions :

What clothes do you like to wear ? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.

1. What is different about the clothes firefighters wear ?

They are made of a special material that does not burn.

2. How do the clothes that doctors wear help them ?

.....

3. What do engineers and builders often wear ?

.....

4. Why do you think they wear these clothes ?

.....

5. In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why ?

.....

7 Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

- What makes this job special ?
- Why do you think the person does this job ?
- Say if you would like to do this job and why.

UNIT 1

Around town

Objectives

- **Reading :**

  A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport; a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend

- **Writing :**

  A fact file; a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email;

- **Listening :**

  Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out

- **Speaking :**

  Giving directions, talking about your city or village, discussing timetables and public transport, making suggestions

- **Language :**

  The present simple for scheduled events

- **Life Skills :**

  Decision making, respect for diversity

ثلاثة أسئلة الوحدة
Master your term للرجاعة الوحدة في الأداء
• العلامة SB تشير أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تشير أسئلة كتاب التدريبات
أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5 WB pages 72 & 73

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n)	متحف الأحياء المائية/حوض أسماك	lake (n)	بحيرة
bank (n)	بنك	monument (n)	أثر (تاريخى)
botanical gardens (n)	حدائق نباتية	peaceful (adj)	مسالم - هادئ
library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى	especially (adv)	خصوصًا - خاصة

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

corner (n)	ركن - زاوية	borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف
station (n)	محطة (قطار أو أتوبيس)	shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
facts (n)	حقائق	turn(ed) (v) , (n)	يتجه / دور
restaurant (n)	مطعم	plants (n)	نباتات
directions (n)	اتجاهات		

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

ruins (n)	بقايا / أطلال	natural (adj)	طبيعى
pollution (n)	تلوث	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق / معلومات
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	village (n)	قرية
area (n)	منطقة - مساحة	grandparents (n)	الأجداد
Sphinx (n)	أبوالهول	event (n)	حدث
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يضم	useful (adj)	مفيد - نافع

Cities and important places — مدن وأماكن هامة

Ismailia	مدينة الاسماعيلية	Lake Timsah	بحيرة التمساح
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Natural Science Museum	متحف العلوم الطبيعية
Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	Giza	مدينة الجيزة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
take	يأخذ	took	taken
go	يذهب	went	gone
run	يجرى	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
build	يبنى	built	built
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions — ادرس هذه التعريفات

aquarium	you can see beautiful fish there	متحف الأحياء المائية
bank	you can borrow and save money there	بنك
botanical gardens	you can see trees and other interesting plants there	حدائق نباتية
library	you can borrow and read books there	مكتبة
sports centre	you can play volleyball, tennis and other sports there	مركز رياضى
lake	a large area of water with land around it	بحيرة
monument	something that people build to remember an important person or event	أثر (تاريخى)
peaceful	calm and quiet	مسالم/هادى
traffic	cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road	حركة المرور
especially	more than usual	خصوصًا - خاصة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	things يقوم بعمل أشياء		go	swimming يذهب للسباحة	
	the same things يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء			shopping يذهب للتسوق	
	homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى		give	directions يعطى اتجاهات	
				advice ينصح	

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Mona : Hello, Dalia. I'm at the library. Where are you ?

Dalia : Hi, Mona. I'm next to the station. How do I get to the library ?

Mona : It's easy. From the station, go straight on(1).

Dalia : How far(2) ?

Mona : For about 20 metres.

Dalia : OK. Do I go past(3) the sports centre(4) ?

Mona : Yes, but then turn left.

Dalia : OK.

Mona : Walk past the botanical gardens(5).

Dalia : I'm walking past them now.

Mona : Great! After the botanical gardens, turn right ....

Dalia : Turn right after the botanical gardens, ... OK.

Mona : Then take the second road on the right. Can you see a restaurant ?

Dalia : I think I can see it. It's on the corner(6).

Mona : Walk past the restaurant. The library is between the restaurant and the museum, opposite the bank.

Dalia : Thanks, Mona. See you soon!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يمشى باستقامة | (2) كم المسافة / البعد | (3) يمشى مارًا بـ | (4) مركز رياضى | (5) حدائق نباتية | (6) على الناصية

on Lesson 2 SB page 5

Nader : My name's Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very historical(1) city, with lots of famous buildings, ruins(2) and monuments(3), but it's a modern city too, and there are lots of things to do here.

At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park, but sometimes we go to a museum or to the aquarium. I love watching the fish!

On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing chess with my granddad. He's very good at it, but sometimes I win !

Judy : My name's Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city(4), with about one and a half million people, and there's always a lot to do at the weekend.

On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this! There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the nature reserve(5).

On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the sports centre for my squash lesson(6). It's my favourite sport.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تاريخى	(2) بقايا/اطلال	(3) آثار	(4) مدينة مزدحمة	(5) محمية طبيعية	(6) درس فى رياضة الاسكواش

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

I am Sherif and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal(1) runs through(2) the city before it reaches(3) the sea.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قناة السويس	(2) تمر / تتدفق خلال	(3) تصل

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive(4) buildings, interesting monuments(5) and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live here, but since traffic(6) is slow, there isn't much pollution(7).

Ismailia is peaceful(8), but it isn't boring!(9) There are lots of things to do here, especially(10) at the weekends. On Friday afternoons, I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it.

On Saturday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre at 9 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friend, Sayed.

There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum(11) because I'm interested in animals. It's a good place to go at the weekend.

Check Vocabulary

(4) جذاب	(5) آثار	(6) حركة المرور	(7) تلوث
(8) هادئ / مسالم	(9) ممل	(10) خصوصًا - خاصة	(11) متحف العلوم الطبيعية

on Lesson 2 WB page 73

I live in a small village in the south of Egypt. At the weekend, I usually do the same things. On Saturdays, I get up at 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. At lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, in the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do ?

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 since

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويأتى بعدها بداية المدة

ex.: - We've lived here since 2007.

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويأتى بعدها جملة فى زمن الماضى

ex.: - I haven't phoned Leen since she left Cairo.

تستخدم بمعنى (لأن) ويأتى بعدها جملة كاملة

ex.: - Since traffic is slow, there isn't much pollution.

2 around - round

* **around (adv) , (prep)** ١. تستخدم للتقريب بمعنى (حوالى)

ex.: - SB Around 350,000 people live in Ismailia.

٢. تستخدم كظرف أو حرف جر لتحديد المكان أو الاتجاه بمعنى (حول)

- The moon goes round / around the Earth.

* **round (adj)** دائرى (الشكل)

ex.: - The sun is round.

3 Interesting - interested - interest

* **interesting (adj)** شيق - رائع

ex.: - SB There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and a lot of gardens in Ismailia.

* **interested (adj) in + (inf. + ing) / noun** اسم مهتم

ex.: - I'm interested in reading short stories.

- He is interested in science.

* **interest (v), (n)** يثير اهتمام / اهتمام

ex.: - Science interests me a lot. (فعل) (فعل)

- My interests are music and painting. (اسم) (اسم)

4 go shopping = do the shopping يستخدم هذان التعبيران بمعنى يتسوق

ex.: - I always go shopping / do the shopping on Friday.

5 reach - arrive - get

* **reach** يصل إلى (مكان) ولا يأتى بعدها حرف جر

ex.: - SB The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea.

* **arrive** يصل (بدون مفعول)

ex.: - She arrived late yesterday.

* **arrive at** يصل إلى مكان صغير (قرية -مدينة صغيرة - مدرسة - .... الخ)

ex.: - He arrived at school on time.

* **arrive in** يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة كبيرة أو دولة)

ex.: - They arrived in Alexandria to spend the summer holiday.

* **get to** يصل إلى مكان ما (بصعوبة)

ex.: - He gets to his work late every day.

6 peace / peaceful

* **peace (n) # war** سلام (اسم لا يُعد) # حرب (اسم يعد)

ex.: - All people don't like wars. They'd like to live in peace.

* **peaceful (adj)** سلمى - مُسالم - ينعم بالسلام - هادىء

ex.: - Ismailia is a peaceful place to to live in. (ينعم بالسلام)

- Elham is a peaceful woman. She doesn't make troubles (هادئ).

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find some facts about يكتشف بعض الحقائق عن	with beaches around it يوجد شواطئ حولها
take the second road يتخذ الطريق الثانى	have tennis lessons يأخذ دروس فى التنس
on the lake على شاطئ البحيرة	look like يشبه
for about 20 metres لمسافة حوالى عشرون مترًا	It is a good place to... إنه مكان جيد لـ ...
run through يجرى خلال - يمر عبر	more than usual أكثر من المعتاد
There are a lot of things to do. يوجد الكثير لتفعله.	find places on the map يجد أماكن على الخريطة
	come home by يأتى للمنزل بواسطة ...

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key Vocabulary

1. Luxor has a lot of interesting ..... . One of them is Karnak Temple.
   a. moments b. monuments c. dictionaries d. corners
2. Ahmed is a ..... student. This means he is calm and quiet.
   a. peaceful b. careless c. helpful d. noisy

3. You can see a lot of beautiful fish in the ..... .
   a. museum b. bank c. library d. aquarium
4. If you want to see trees and other interesting plants, you can go to ..... gardens.
   a. botanical b. electrical c. sports d. balanced
5. My uncle is very good at sports , ... at handball.
   a. hardly b. just c. especially d. only

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB There was a lot of ..... on the roads this morning, so Mr Ahmed was late for work.
   a. care b. peace c. traffic d. juice
7. WB This machine does many things. It is very ..... .
   a. peaceful b. useful c. careful d. helpless
8. SB My city has lots of ..... monuments. I like them very much.
   a. interested b. silly c. interesting d. ugly

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. I can ..... two books from the Public Library in my area.
   a. lend b. give c. borrow d. leave
10. We have four ..... : north, south, east and west.
    a. secrets b. seasons
    c. directions d. dictionaries
11. I'm interested in animals, so I love going to the Natural ..... Museum.
    a. Geography b. Maths c. Science d. History

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Lake Timsah is a beautiful lake ..... beaches around it.
    a. with b. of c. from d. to
13. Rahma has read ..... 12 short stories.
    a. round b. around c. rounded d. bound
14. Judy always goes ..... in the pool.
    a. swim b. to swim c. swam d. swimming
15. The Nile ..... through the city of Banha.
    a. walks b. flies c. runs d. swims
16. Adam ..... to his work late yesterday.
    a. arrived b. got c. reached d. found

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
attractive جذاب / جميل	beautiful	unattractive / ugly غير جذاب / قبيح
modern حديث / عصرى	new / up - to - date	old / ancient قديم / عتيق
interesting رائع / شيق	lovely / exciting	boring ممل
peaceful مُسالم - هادى	calm / quiet	noisy مزعج / ملئ بالضوضاء
famous مشهور	well known	unknown غير معروف
borrow يستعير / يستلف	take	lend يسلف - يقرض

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
– ful	تكون (صفة) من الاسم أو الفعل	careful حذر - حريص helpful مفيد - مساعد peaceful مسالم - هادئ useful مفيد - نافع
– ion	تكون اسم من فعل	pollution تلوث direction اتجاه
– ive	تكون صفة من فعل	attractive جذاب
un –	تكون عكس (الصفة)	unnatural غير طبيعى unusual غير عادى

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word "peaceful" can be replaced by ..... .
   a. ugly and dirty
   b. calm and quiet
   c. quiet and dirty
   d. ugly and calm
2. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. The word "attractive" means ..... .
   a. not good
   b. dirty
   c. beautiful
   d. ugly

3. The word " ..... " can be the opposite of "boring".
   a. near b. interested c. excited d. interesting
4. You can make an adjective from the verb "use" by adding ..... .
   a. – al b. – ful c. – le d. – tion
5. We can form the word "peaceful" from the noun ..... .
   a. pace b. peace c. pack d. pass
6. To give the opposite of the word "natural", we add the prefix ..... .
   a. dis – b. un – c. ir – d. im –

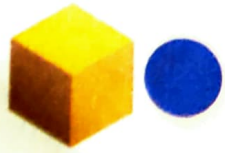
III Language

Remember تذكر

A Prepositions of place : حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان :

in في / داخل

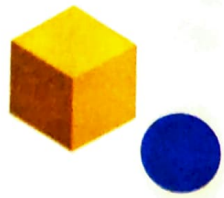
on على


next to بجانب

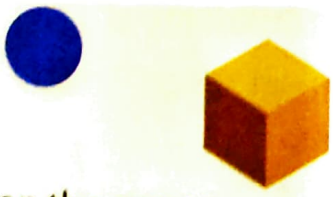
behind خلف

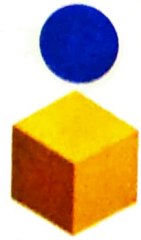
in front of (opposite) مواجه/أمام

under تحت


near بالقرب من

between بين


on the corner
على الركن / الزاوية


above فوق

Phrases to show directions — عبارات تبين الاتجاهات

turn right	يتجه يمينًا
turn left	يتجه يسارًا
go straight on	يسير باستقامة على
walk past / go past	يمشي مارًا بـ
take the first / second / ..... road	يتخذ الطريق الأول / الثاني .....
on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the corner	على الناصية

ex. - From the sports centre, go straight on for about 20 metres.
- Go past the botanical gardens and the aquarium and then turn left.

B Prepositions of time : — حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت :

at – on – in

1 at

- **Specific time** — قبل وقت محدد
  ex. - The first lesson begins at 8 o'clock.
- **Names of mealtimes** — قبل أسماء الوجبات
  ex. - I'll meet you at breakfast / lunch / dinner.
- **Before holidays** — قبل الإجازات الرسمية / الأعياد
  at Christmas – at Thanksgiving
  ex. - At Christmas, we decorate our tree with silver bells.
- **To talk about a person's age as a point in time** — عند التحدث عن عمر شخص كنقطة زمنية
  ex. - Hana left university at 22.
  - At the age of seven, Leen learned to swim.
- **With these phrases** — مع هذه العبارات

at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	at night	ليلاً
at dawn	في الفجر	at midnight	في منتصف الليل
at noon	في فترة الظهيرة	at midday	في منتصف النهار
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع		

2 in

- **With parts of the day** مع أجزاء اليوم
  in the morning - in the afternoon - in the evening
  ex. - in the morning, I always run for 30 minutes.
- **With seasons, months and years** مع فصول السنة والشهور والسنوات
  - spring - summer - winter - autumn
  - January - March - September
  - 2012 - 1989 - 2000 - 2019
- **Before phrases identifying centuries and historical periods**
  قبل عبارات تشير إلى القرون والفترات التاريخية
  - in the 19th century في القرن التاسع عشر
  - in the 1960s في فترة الستينات
- **For a period of time before something happens or is completed**
  لفترة زمنية قبل وقوع الحدث أو اكتماله
  - in ten minutes في خلال عشر دقائق
  - in two days في خلال يومين

3 on

- **Before a specific day and dates** قبل يوم معين والتواريخ
  ex. - I'll see you on Tuesday.
  - The final exam is on June 29th.
- **With special days or occasions** مع أيام ومناسبات خاصة
  ex. - I'll get many presents on my birthday.

- **With these phrases** مع هذه العبارات
  on holiday في أجازة
  on duty في العمل / الخدمة
  on time في الوقت المحدد
  on a warm day في يوم دافئ
  on a sunny summer day في يوم صيفي مشمس

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The shopping centre is ____ the train station.
   a. straight b. corner c. opposite d. next

2. The theatre is ..... the aquarium and the museum.
a. between b. next c. on d. in

3. I get up ..... nine o'clock every day.
a. in b. at c. on d. from

4. I often play games with my cousins ..... the afternoon.
a. at b. on c. in d. from

5. ..... Saturdays, I like to stay at home.
a. On b. At c. From d. Into

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	c — المعنى المطلوب يتفق مع الإجابة
2	a — يوجد بالجملة ثلاث أماكن لذا الإجابة تتفق مع الجملة (مكان بين مكانين)
3	b — يسبق الساعة / الوقت المحدد بحرف الجر (at)
4	c — تعتبر (the afternoon) من أجزاء اليوم لذا يسبقها حرف الجر (in)
5	a — تُسبق أيام الأسبوع بحرف الجر (on)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB & WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB The museum is ..... the corner opposite the hospital.
a. in b. on c. next d. between

2. SB I always go to the park ..... Saturday mornings.
a. on b. of c. at d. in

3. WB ..... lunchtime, I visit my cousins.
a. On b. In c. At d. Over

4. WB The sports centre is ..... the aquarium and the hospital.
a. next to b. opposite c. between d. on

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. She usually gets up ..... half past eight.
a. in b. for c. up d. at

6. Lucy was standing ..... the right of the picture.
a. up b. on c. next d. of

7. From the station, go straight ..... for about 10 metres.
a. in b. of c. on d. at

8. I did the crossword ..... five minutes.
   a. on b. in c. at d. over
9. They like to visit Luxor ..... winter.
   a. of b. at c. in d. on

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB & WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Fady goes shopping ..... (on) the afternoon.
2. SB Write what you do ..... (in) the weekend.
3. WB The library is ..... (opposite) to the bank.
4. WB ..... (At) Saturdays, I get up at 7 am.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. They travel to Dahab ..... (at) holiday.
6. He's not here ..... (in) the moment.
7. My house is on the ..... (opposite) of the street corner.
8. Farmers usually start working ..... (in) dawn.
9. Clothes were very different ..... (at) the 18th century.
10. The bus arrives ..... (on) ten minutes.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٩ و ٢٠ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   - **Ismailia is a peaceful city.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why isn't Ismailia a boring place ?
   - .....
3. If you are interested in animals, where can you go in Ismailia ?
   - .....

مهارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني.

A. Read the sentences

1. Ismailia is between Port Said and Suez.
١. تقع مدينة الاسماعيلية بين مدينتى بورسعيد والسويس.
2. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea.
٢. تتدفق قناة السويس خلال المدينة قبل أن تصل إلى البحر.
3. There are attractive buildings.
٣. يوجد بها مبان جذابة.
4. There are interesting monuments and lots of gardens.
٤. يوجد بها آثار رائعة وكثير من الحدائق.
5. I often go to Lake Timsah with my family.
٥. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى بحيرة التمساح مع عائلتى.
6. Lake Timsah is beautiful with beaches around it.
٦. بحيرة التمساح بحيرة جميلة ويوجد شواطئ حولها.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

opposite - corner - monuments - interested - between

1. There are many attractive ..... in Egypt.
2. The museum is on the ....., opposite the library.
3. The shopping centre is ..... the station.
4. She is ..... in reading and watching films.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a fact file

كتابة ملف حقائق

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Model fact file about Ismailia

Fact file	Ismailia
Where :	1. between Port Said and Suez
What it looks like :	2. attractive buildings 3. interesting monuments
How many people :	4. around 350.000 people
Places to visit in city :	5. Natural Science Museum
sports :	6. tennis, swimming
Places to visit near city :	7. Lake Timsah

D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة ملف حقائق

- SB Look at the fact file from exercise (c). Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "Ismailia" :

.....

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

A. Giving directions :

إعطاء الاتجاهات :

1. Go straight on this road. The shopping centre is opposite the station.
١. سر باستقامة على هذا الطريق ستجد مركز تسوق فى مقابل المحطة.
2. The museum is between the hospital and the bank.
٢. يوجد المتحف بين المستشفى والبنك.
3. From the market, turn left and go straight on.
٣. من السوق اتجه يسار وسر باستقامة.
4. Take the second road on the left. The hospital is on the right.
٤. خذ الطريق الثانى على جهة اليسار. توجد المستشفى على جهة اليمين.

B. Talking about your city or village

التحدث عن مدينتك أو قريتك :

Questions	Answers
1. Where do you live ? ١. أين تعيش ؟	- I live in Ismailia. - أعيش فى مدينة الإسماعيلية.
2. Where is Ismailia ? ٢. أين مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟	- It is between Port Said and Suez. - إنها تقع بين مدينتى بورسعيد والسويس.
3. What does it look like ? ٣. كيف تبدو مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟	- It has attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. - لديها مبانٍ جذابة وآثار رائعة وكثير من الحدائق.
4. How many people live in Ismailia ? ٤. كم يبلغ عدد السكان الذين يعيشون فى مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟	- Around 350.000 people live there. - يبلغ عدد السكان الذين يعيشون هناك حوالى ثلاثمائة وخمسون ألف نسمة.
5. What places can you visit near your city ? ٥. ما الأماكن التى يمكنك زيارتها بالقرب من مدينتك ؟	- I can visit Lake Timsah, which is near the city and the Natural Science Museum. - يمكننى زيارة بحيرة التمساح التى هى بالقرب من المدينة ومتحف العلوم الطبيعية.
6. What sports can you do in your city ? ٦. ما الألعاب الرياضية التى يمكنك ممارستها فى مدينتك ؟	- I can have tennis lessons at the sports centre and I can also go swimming. - يمكننى أخذ دروس تنس بالمركز الرياضى والذهاب للسباحة.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Hamza is asking Ali about the sports centre.

Hamza : Hello ! Is the sports centre near from here ?

Ali : Hello ! (1) ..... . It's a five-minute walk.

Hamza : (2) ..... ?

Ali : Yes, walk along this road. It's opposite the bank.

(3) ..... ?

Hamza : I play tennis. What about you ?

Ali : (4) ..... .

Hamza : Swimming is a nice sport. When do you go there ?

Ali : (5) ..... .

Hamza : Great ! Next Monday, I will be at the club, so I can meet you there.

Ali : That will be great !

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We had a nice meal at this ..... last week.
   a. factory b. bank c. restaurant d. station
2. My father often goes to his village because it is a ..... place.
   a. peaceful b. boring c. noisy d. bad
3. WB " ..... " is a large area of water with land around it.
   a. Sea b. River c. Lake d. Pond
4. Manar is interested ..... watching English movies.
   a. at b. in c. of d. on
5. SB The café is on the corner ..... the botanical garden.
   a. for b. of c. down d. up
6. SB There are lots of things to do here, ... at the weekend.
   a. slowly b. quickly c. suddenly d. especially

7. WB You can see trees and other interesting plants at a / an ..... .
   a. airport b. aquarium c. botanical garden d. library
8. The train leaves ..... seven tomorrow.
   a. in b. at c. on d. of
9. My birthday is ..... 17th June.
   a. on b. at c. from d. in
10. WB The train leaves ..... five minutes.
   a. on b. up c. in d. for

3 Complete the text with words from the list :

beaches - kitchens - peaceful - weekend - Lake

I like Ismailia. It is a (1) ..... city. There are lots of things to do there, especially at the (2) ..... . On Friday afternoons, I often go to (3) ..... Timsah with my family. It's a beautiful lake with (4) ..... around it.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB I live ..... (on) a small village in the south of Egypt.
2. SB Judy goes to the sports centre ..... (of) the afternoon on Saturdays.
3. I have tennis lessons ..... (in) 9 am.
4. The shopping centre is ..... (opposite) to the station.

5 Choose the correct word :

1 . WB I live **in/on** a small village in the South of Egypt.
2 . SB Nagwa usually visits her grandparents **in/at** the weekend.
3. WB You can't hear any traffic here. It is very **noisy / peaceful**.

6 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Ismailia is an interesting city"

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 6 : 8 WB pages 74 & 75

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض	comfortable (adj)	مريح
space (n)	فضاء	passengers (n)	مسافرين
ferry (n)	معدية (النهر) - عَبارة	tram (n)	الترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
valley (n)	وادى	below (adv), (prep)	أسفل - أدنى

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

metro (n)	قطار مترو الانفاق	floor (n)	طابق - أرضية
metro map (n)	خريطة المترو	electric (adj)	كهربى
metro station (n)	محطة مترو	journey (n)	رحلة (طويلة)
platform (n)	رصيف القطار	stop (n)	نقطة توقف / محطة (أتوبيس أو قطار)
paintings (n)	لوحات / رسومات	chat (ted) (v), (n)	يدردش - حديث ودى - دردشة
objects (n)	أشياء / مقتنيات	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	engineering works (n)	أعمال هندسية
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	guard (n)	حارس
crosswords (n)	كلمات متقاطعة	university (n)	جامعة

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	environment (n)	البيئة
type (n)	نوع	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	rails (n)	قضبان السكة الحديدية
railway (n)	خط سكة حديد	central (adj)	رئيسى - مركزى
energy (n)	طاقة	Bondi (n)	شاطئ بوندى (أشهر شواطئ استراليا)
Sydney (n)	مدينة سيدنى (استراليا)		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
leave	يغادر - يرحل	left	left
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
get	يصل - يحصل على	got	got
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
catch	يلحق - يصطاد	caught	caught
find	يجد	found	found

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

platform	you can catch a train from here	رصيف (القطار)
map	you can use this to follow directions	خريطة
exhibition	you can go here to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc.	عرض - معرض
timetable	you can use this to find when a train or bus leaves	جدول مواعيد
metro	you can use this to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground	مترو الأنفاق

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

take	the train يستقل القطار	**get**	home يصل للمنزل
	the second road يأخذ اتجاه الطريق الثاني		back يعود / يرجع
	four hours يستغرق أربع ساعات	**follow**	directions يتبع الاتجاهات
			the rules يتبع القواعد

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Khaled: Hi Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition(1) tomorrow ? My dad is taking me.

Fawzi : Yes, please ! What time does it start ?

Khaled: It starts at 9.30. We're going by metro(2).

Fawzi : Which train shall we get ?

Khaled: The first metro train leaves(3) at 8.20 and arrives(4) at 8.30.

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition starts !

Khaled: Perhaps we can leave later.

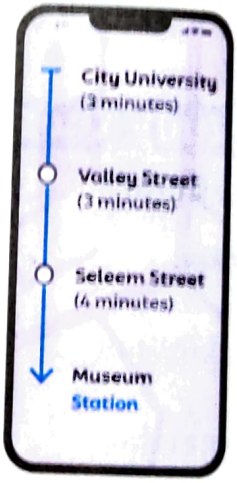
Fawzi : What time does the exhibition finish ?

Khaled: It finishes at 2.00.

Fawzi : OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon to get back ?

Khaled: Yes, one leaves at 1.15 pm and arrives at 1.25.

Fawzi : Great ! Let's take that.



Check Vocabulary

(1) معرض الفضاء | (2) باستخدام مترو الأنفاق | (3) يغادر | (4) يصل

• on Lesson 3 WB page 74

Man : Good morning. Where does the train to Aswan leave from ?

Guard : It leaves from platform(1) four.

Man : Thanks. What time is the next train ?

Guard : The next train leaves in five minutes(2).

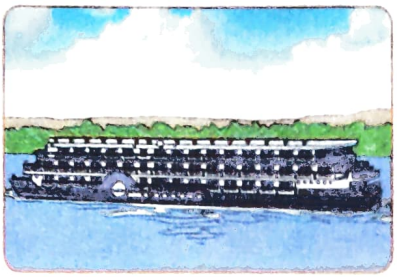
Man : Great. What time does it arrive in Aswan ?

Guard : The train usually takes six hours, so the next train arrives in Aswan at about 4.30.

Check Vocabulary

(1) رصيف القطار | (2) في غضون/ خلال خمس دقائق

on Lesson 4 SB page 8



I love travelling[1] by train because it's interesting to look out of[2] the window. In one journey, you can see ferries[3] crossing the Nile, green valleys[4], peaceful villages[5] and busy cities[6]. Trains are often fast and comfortable[7], too. Egypt has the oldest railway[8] in Africa. More than 800 million passengers[9] travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railway ! I take the train when I visit my grandparents in Edfu. It's my favourite journey[10].

Riham

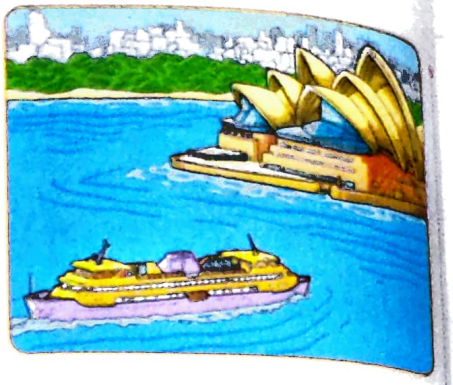
Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram[11] to travel around the city. It's great way to travel ! It's easy to use and it isn't expensive. Trams are electric[12], so they are better for the environment[13] than other types of transport[14]. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual[15] : they have two floors[16] ! I like sitting at the top and watching the streets below.

Hana

Check Vocabulary

(1) السفر	(2) ينظر من خلال	(3) معديات / عبارات	(4) أودية
(5) قرى هادئة	(6) مدن مزدحمة	(7) مريح	(8) خط سكك حديدية
(9) مسافرين	(10) رحلة (طويلة)	(11) ترام	(12) كهربى
(13) البيئة	(14) النقل والمواصلات	(15) غير معتاد	(16) طوابق / أدوار

• on Lesson 4 WB page 75



Some people think that Sydney in Australia has the best transport in the world. Why ? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. Comfortable buses go to the nearest beaches such as Bondi[1]. If you want to get somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from Central Station[2] to many places, including[3] the airport[4]. It is quiet on the water, so ferries are peaceful and they are also easy to use. It is interesting to see the famous buildings[5] from the water, too.

Check Vocabulary

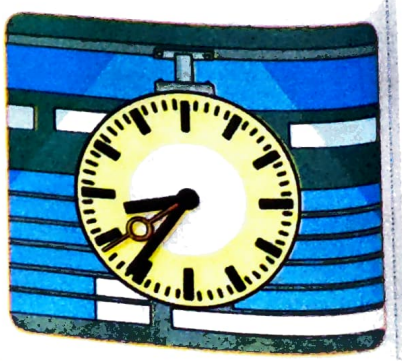
(1) شاطئ بوندى (الأكثر شهرة فى استراليا) | (2) محطة رئيسية | (3) بما فى ذلك / متضمناً | (4) مطار | (5) مبانى مشهورة

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Nadia : Which train do we need for Tanta ?
Mother : We need the train to Alexandria. Look, it stops at Tanta.
Nadia : Oh, yes. So, the next train is at 11.30.
Mother : That's right.
Nadia : And when does it arrive ?
Mother : It arrives at 13:00.
Nadia : Which platform does it leave from ?
Mother : It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from platform 7.

• on Lesson 3 WB page 74



Good morning. This is the 11.30 train to Luxor. It leaves in five minutes[1]. The train stops[2] at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It doesn't stop at Al Balyana today because there are engineering works[3]. The train arrives[4] in Luxor at 23.15.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فى خلال خمس دقائق | (2) يتوقف | (3) أعمال هندسية | (4) يصل

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 take — يأخذ / يستغرق (وقت)

ex.: - He forgot to take his English book.

ex.: - The journey to Port Said takes four hours by train.

2 stop (v) / (n) — يتوقف - محطة (قطار - أوتوبيس)

ex.: - Express trains don't stop at all stations.

ex.: - SB How many stops are there by metro ?

3 look forward to + (inf. + ing) / (n) — يتطلع إلى

ex.: - SB I'm looking forward to seeing you later.

ex.: - Sally is looking forward to her weekend.

4 floor / flour

* floor (n) — أرضية - طابق

ex.: - Sara is sweeping the floor.

ex.: - Some buses in Alexandria have two floors.

ex.: - I live on the third floor.

* flour (n) — دقيق

ex.: - Bread and cakes are made of flour.

5 It's + adj صفة + to + inf. (المصدر)...

ex.: - It's easy to use my new mobile.

6 see — لاحظ استخدام الفعل see

ex.: - I saw Hend watering the flowers.

عند استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد المفعول به، فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث فى منتصفه ولم نشاهد بدايته.

ex.: - I saw Hend water the flowers.

عند استخدام (المصدر inf.) بعد المفعول فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث من البداية حتى النهاية.

7 — ٧. لاحظ :

يستخدم الفعل مضاف له ing - بعد الأفعال الآتية :

(love - like - prefer)

ex.: - SB I love travelling by train.

ولكن إذا سبق تلك الأفعال (would) نستخدم (المصدر to + inf.).

ex.: - SB Would you like to come to the space exhibition ?

8 platform / pavement

رصيف (محطة قطار)

* **platform (n)**

ex.: - The passengers are waiting for the train at platform 5.

رصيف (الشارع)

* **pavement** = sidewalk (n)

ex.: - People should walk on the pavement to avoid accidents.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

by metro	باستخدام مترو الأنفاق
at the Science Museum	فى متحف العلوم
get to the museum	يصل إلى المتحف
How long does the journey take by metro ?	كم المدة التى تستغرقها الرحلة باستخدام مترو الأنفاق ؟
leave at	يغادر فى وقت...
catch a train	يلحق بالقطار
get a train	يستقل قطار
go upstairs	يصعد للطابق الأعلى
The best way to + inf. ...	افضل طريقة لـ ...
It's a great way to travel !	إنها طريقة رائعة للسفر !
look out of the window	ينظر من خلال النافذة
busy cities	مدن مزدحمة
travel around the city	يتجول حول المدينة
better for the environment	أفضل للبيئة
sit at the top	يجلس فى الأعلى
good for	مفيد لـ / جيد لـ
It's more fun !	إنها أكثر متعة !
across water	عبر المياه
all parts of the city	كل أجزاء المدينة
on the water	على المياه
What's special about ... ?	ماذا يميز .... ؟ ما المميز حول .... ؟

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I think travelling by train is very ..... . It's my favourite.
   a. boring b. messy c. comfortable d. hard

2. If you go to the space ..... today, you'll learn about the science of space.
   a. street b. exhibition c. room d. gallery
3. During the train journey, we can see ..... crossing the Nile.
   a. ferries b. cities c. boxes d. floors
4. ..... must book tickets before getting on the train.
   a. Babies b. Rabbits c. Passengers d. Plants
5. Lots of people in Alexandria use the ..... to travel around the city.
   a. plane b. tram c. ground d. ferry

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB The ..... is between two mountains.
   a. lake b. island c. valley d. boat
7. WB You can use the ..... to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground.
   a. plane b. tram c. taxi d. metro
8. WB You can use ..... to find when a train or bus leaves.
   a. pavement b. diary c. timetable d. platform

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Trains, buses and ferries are types of ..... .
   a. boats b. plants c. transport d. technology
10. A train uses ..... to move.
   a. rails b. rolls c. roles d. rules
11. ..... cities are always polluted.
   a. Free b. Busy c. Empty d. Peaceful

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Dina is hurrying to ..... the bus to school.
   a. hold b. bring c. catch d. reach
13. Milk is good ..... building strong bodies.
   a. at b. to c. by d. for
14. Which ..... is your flat on ?
   a. platform b. flour c. floor d. flower
15. It's important ..... regularly.
   a. exercise b. to exercise c. exercising d. exercises
16. How can we get ..... the Egyptian Museum, Baleegh ?
   a. to b. off c. from d. at

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
leave يغادر	go – move	arrive يصل
show يوضح - يبين	display – exhibit	hide – cover يخبئ - يغطى
start يبدأ	begin	end – finish ينهى - ينتهى
below أسفل	under – down	above فوق
prefer يفضل	like better	hate يكره
usual مألوف - عادى	normal – familiar	unusual غير مألوف
nearest الأقرب	closest	farthest الأبعد
comfortable مريح	relaxing	uncomfortable غير مريح
easy to use سهل الاستخدام	user friendly	difficult to use صعب الاستخدام
unpolluting غير ملوث	good for the environment	polluting ملوث
upstairs الدور العلوى	the higher floor	downstairs الدور السفلى

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
– ing	تكون (اسم - صفة)	engineering الهندسة paintings لوحات / رسومات polluting ملوث interesting شيق boring ممل
– able	تكون (صفة)	comfortable مريح

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The antonym of the word "leave" is to ..... .

a. arrive b. drive c. ride d. dry

2. The words "peaceful" and "noisy" are ..... .
   a. opposites b. equals c. synonyms d. prefixes
3. When something isn't good for the environment, then it is ..... .
   a. lazy b. active c. effective d. polluting
4. The antonym of the word "nearest" is ..... .
   a. fastest b. biggest c. farthest d. highest
5. We can form an adjective when we add "....." to the word "interest".
   a. - able b. - ing c. - est d. - less
6. The word "engineering" is a / an ..... .
   a. preposition b. verb c. noun d. adverb

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

1. **Affirmative Statements**
   الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / They / we / You + inf. (المصدر) — فاعل جمع

He / she / It + inf. (المصدر) + s/ es/ ies — فاعل مفرد

ex. - The maps show how to travel by metro.

ex. - The train usually takes twelve hours from Cairo to Aswan.

لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - The library opens at 8.30 in the morning.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

ex. - The film finishes at 10.30.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex. - The eagle flies very high in the sky.

② Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / we / you / They + don't + inf. (المصدر)
(اسم جمع)

ex. - I don't get up early on holidays.

He / she / It + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)
(اسم مفرد)

ex. - She doesn't read newspapers on Friday.

لاحظ أن :

١. حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى.

ex. - She doesn't play tennis on Sundays.

٢. تستخدم (never) فى صيغة النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع (اسم مفرد / He / She / it).

ex. - My father never forgets my birthday.

لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتى :

be
- I → am = 'm
- He / She / It (فاعل مفرد) → is = 's
- You / They / We (فاعل جمع) → are = 're

ex. - The Space Exhibition is at the Science Museum.

a) Yes/No question : أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

DO + I / we / you / they + inf. المصدر ..... ?

ex. Do you like sport ?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

DOES + he / she / it + inf. المصدر ..... ?

ex. Does he get up early on Fridays ?
- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

لاحظ أن :

يحذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):

b) Wh-question : ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة الاستفهام + **do / does** + **I / we / you / they / he / she / it** + **inf.** المصدر ..... ?

ex. - What time does the train arrive in Aswan ?
- What type of energy do trams use ?

Usage الاستخدام

Remember تذكر

١. يستخدم زمن المضارع للتعبير عن العادات والأحداث المتكررة ويستخدم مع ظروف التكرار التالية:

always / sometimes / usually - often - never

ex. - I always get up early.
- We never go to school on Fridays.

٢. يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد زمنية ثابتة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل ومواعيد البرامج التليفزيونية.

ex. - My train arrives at 7.15 tomorrow morning.
- The match starts at 9 pm next Friday.
- The course ends in October.
- This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30.
- My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

لاحظ أن :

هناك أفعال شائعة الاستخدام مع المضارع البسيط عندما يستخدم مع الأحداث ذات المواعيد الثابتة. مثل :

close / open / start / end / leave / finish / arrive / take off / land

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Space Exhibition ..... at 9.30 tomorrow. We're going by metro.
   a. start b. starts c. started d. starting
2. What time does the exhibition ..... ? - It finishes at 10.30 pm.
   a. finish b. finishes c. finished d. finishing
3. The train to Port Said ..... this station at 3.15 pm tomorrow.
   a. left b. leave c. leaves d. leaving

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	b — الجملة تعبر عن برامج محددة ومواعيدها ثابتة لذا تكون الإجابة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.
2	a — يتكون السؤال فى المضارع البسيط (Q.w + do / does + فاعل + inf. المصدر ?)
3	c — الجملة تعبر عن جدول مواعيد ثابتة والفاعل مفرد لذا تكون الإجابة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB & WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB What time does the lesson ..... ?
   a. starts b. started c. start d. starting
2. SB When ..... this plane arrive in Cairo ?
   a. is b. do c. does d. has
3. SB Which metro station ..... they need to go to ?
   a. does b. do c. is d. are
4. WB The train ..... in Luxor at 23.15.
   a. arrive b. arrives c. will arrive d. is going to arrive

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. ____ does the journey take by bus ?
   a. How often b. How long c. How many d. How far
6. I ____ to go to Luxor. What time does the bus leave ?
   a. wants b. want c. wanted d. will want
7. He ____ misses the bus to work.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. hasn't d. never
8. ____ Heba travel in a car or in a taxi ?
   a. Do b. Is c. Does d. Are

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB It's an hour before the exhibition ____ (start).
2. SB How many stops ____ (there are) by metro ?
3. WB ____ (Do) a ferry take people across the desert or across water ?
4. WB The train usually ____ (take) six hours to reach Aswan.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. What time ____ (do) the film start ?
6. Ahmed's uncle ____ (doesn't) comes late.
7. Where ____ (does) Ayman and Ashraf want to go ?
8. What ____ (be) the best place to visit in Aswan ?
9. We usually ____ (travelling) by train to Aswan.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 8 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

A. Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Do you think that the train is the main means of transport in Egypt ? Why / Why not ?

   - Yes, I think so. Because it's not expensive and fast.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. You can see ..... crossing the Nile.
   a. trains b. metros c. ferries d. buses

- Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. The pronoun **(I)** in the first paragraph refers to ..... .
   a. Hana b. Riham c. Khalid d. Mai

معارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

1. I love travelling by train because it's interesting to look out of the window.
١. أحب السفر باستخدام القطار لأنه من الممتع النظر من خلال النافذة.
2. Trains are fast and comfortable.
٢. القطارات سريعة ومريحة.
3. Egypt has the oldest railway in Africa.
٣. مصر لديها أقدم خط سكة حديد فى أفريقيا.
4. More than 800 million passengers travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railways.
٤. يسافر أكثر من ٨٠٠ مليون مسافر كل عام بالقطار فى مصر على ٥,٠٠٠ كيلومترات من خطوط السكك الحديدية.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

sports centre - library - does - do - tram

1. Lots of people in Alexandria use the ..... .
2. How often ..... you go to the library ?
3. You can borrow books from the ..... .
4. Young people do sports at the ..... .

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :**
  "Types of transport in your city"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Discussing timetables and public transport :

مناقشة الجداول الزمنية ووسائل المواصلات العامة :

* **Ali :** Which way do you like to travel ? Why ?

- أى وسيلة مواصلات تفضل / تحب فى السفر ؟ ولماذا ؟

Ahmed :
I like the train because it's comfortable and it isn't expensive.
أحمد : أحب القطار لأنه مريح ورخيص الثمن.

Hala :
I prefer the tram. It's more fun!
هالة : أفضل الترام. إنه أكثر متعة!

Questions	Answers
1. What time does the train to Alexandria leave ? ١. ما الوقت الذى يغادر فيه القطار إلى مدينة الإسكندرية ؟	- At 11.30. - فى الحادية عشر والنصف.
2. Which platform does it leave from ? ٢. أى رصيف يغادر منه القطار ؟	- From platform 7. - من رصيف رقم ٧.
3. How long does the journey take to Alexandria ? ٣. كم المدة التى تستغرقها الرحلة لمدينة الإسكندرية؟	- About 3 hours. - حوالى ثلاث ساعات.
4. How many passengers travel by train every year in Egypt ? ٤. كم راكب يسافر بالقطار كل عام فى مصر ؟	- More than 800 Million passengers. - أكثر من ٨٠٠ مليون راكب.
5. What type of energy do trams use ? ٥. ما نوع الطاقة التى تستخدمها قطارات الترام ؟	- They use electricity. - يستخدمون الكهرباء.
6. What is special about some of the trams in Alexandria ? ٦. ماذا يميز بعض قطارات الترام فى مدينة الإسكندرية ؟	- They have two floors. - قطارات الترام لها طابقين.

1 ... the following dialogue :

... suggests going to the Space Exhibition.

... shall we go to the Space Exhibition ?

... : ..... .

... : ..... ?

: We can go tomorrow morning.

Adham: Where will we meet ?

Ali : (3) ..... .

Adham: OK. I will wait in front of the Science Museum.

Ali : (4) ..... ?

Adham: No. I don't think Omar will come with us.

Ali : Why ?

Adham: (5) ..... .

Ali : He is ill ! We could visit him after visiting the exhibition.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My journey to Port Said ..... about four hours.
   a. takes b. gives c. gets d. sends
2. What about going to the Space ..... at the Science Museum tomorrow ?
   a. Selection b. Prohibition c. Exception d. Exhibition
3. "....." gives the opposite meaning of "hide".
   a. Leave b. See c. Show d. Use
4. I like travelling on this train because it is ..... .
   a. expensive b. comfortable c. slow d. uncomfortable
5. After leaving his secondary school, my brother went to the ..... .
   a. aquarium b. museum c. university d. station
6. SB The ..... shows how to travel by metro.
   a. exhibition b. map c. stop d. space

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Adham suggests going to the Space Exhibition.

Adham: Shall we go to the Space Exhibition ?

Ali : (1) ..... .

Adham: (2) ..... ?

Ali : We can go tomorrow morning.

Adham: Where will we meet ?

Ali : (3) ..... .

Adham: OK. I will wait in front of the Science Museum.

Ali : (4) ..... ?

Adham: No. I don't think Omar will come with us.

Ali : Why ?

Adham: (5) ..... .

Ali : He is ill ! We could visit him after visiting the exhibition.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My journey to Port Said ..... about four hours.
   a. takes b. gives c. gets d. sends
2. What about going to the Space ..... at the Science Museum tomorrow ?
   a. Selection b. Prohibition c. Exception d. Exhibition
3. "....." gives the opposite meaning of "hide".
   a. Leave b. See c. Show d. Use
4. I like travelling on this train because it is ..... .
   a. expensive b. comfortable c. slow d. uncomfortable
5. After leaving his secondary school, my brother went to the ..... .
   a. aquarium b. museum c. university d. station
6. SB The ..... shows how to travel by metro.
   a. exhibition b. map c. stop d. space

7. WB The opposite of "interesting" is "..... ".
   a. boring b. exciting c. pleasant d. comfortable

8. When ..... ?
   a. is the film starting b. the film is starting
   c. the film starts d. does the film start

9. SB The library ..... at 3.15.
   a. closed b. will close c. is going to close d. closes

10. The plane ..... at Luxor Airport at 23.05 pm.
    a. landed b. lands c. will land d. land

3 Complete the text with words from the list :

environment - with - travel - top - electric

The tram is one of the most famous types of transport in Alexandria. Lots of people use it to (1) ..... around the city. Trams are (2) ..... , so they are better for the (3) ..... than other types of transport. Some of the trams in Alexandria have two floors. I like sitting at the (4) ..... and watching the streets below.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My Arabic lesson ..... (start) at half past nine next Sunday.
2. Port Said train ..... (reach) in ten minutes.
3. SB When does this plane ..... (arrives) in Cairo ?
4. WB My father ..... (not take) the early bus because it is slow.

5 Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Hesham who has travelled to Tunisia about new Egyptian cities :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your name is Mazen and your email address is mazen2004@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is heshamprince@gmail.com".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 76 & 77

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	indoors (adv)	داخل المنزل
pottery (n)	أوانى فخارية - صناعة الفخار	suggestion (n)	إقتراح
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	outdoors (adv)	خارج المنزل

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب / يرد	describe (d) (v)	يصف
disagree (d) (v)	يرفض	opinions (n)	آراء
politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة	feelings (n)	مشاعر
suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	final (adj)	نهائى
arrange (d) (v)	يرتب	decision (n)	قرار
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة	reply (ied) (v)	يرد

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

El-Orman Gardens	حدائق الأورمان (بالجيزة)	Khedive (n)	الخديوى (لقب حاكم مصر)
wild (adj)	برىّ	online (adj), (adv)	متصل بالإنترنت
trip (n)	رحلة (قصيرة)	ready (adj)	جاهز - مستعد
review (n)	مقال نقدى	invitation (n)	دعوة
correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة	nearby (adj)	قريب
easily (adv)	بسهولة	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
lovely (adj)	جميل - جذّاب	gardener (n)	بستانى / جناينى

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet up	يتقابل	met up	met up
send	يرسل	sent	sent
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
break	يكسر - يتكسر	broke	broken
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	a decision	يتخذ قرار	do	work	يقوم بعمل
	a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح		something	يقوم بعمل شيء ما
	a plan	يخطط		sports	يقوم بممارسة رياضة
	lunch	يعد وجبة الغذاء		an activity	يمارس نشاط
	sure	يتأكد			

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Basel : Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up tomorrow ?

Taher : Hi, Basel. That would be great. Shall we go to the sports centre ?

Basel : I'm not sure. I hurt my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.

Taher : Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then ?

Basel : Maybe but it's a long way(1) to walk. I'd prefer(2) to go somewhere indoors(3).

Taher : Oh, OK. How about the museum ?

Basel : Perhaps ... but it's always busy on Saturdays.

Taher : OK, so what would you like to do ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) طريق طويل | (2) يفضل | (3) داخل المنزل

Basel : I think it would be nice to watch a computer game. There's a new one which lets you practise your English.

Taher : That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house ?

Basel : I'd love to![4] Thanks, Taher. See you tomorrow!

Check Vocabulary

(4) أحب ذلك

• on Lesson 5 WB page 76

Injy : Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Lina ?

Lina : That would be great, Injy. Shall we go to the museum ?

Injy : I'm not sure. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.

Lina : OK. Shall we go to the shops, then ?

Injy : I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. How about the park ?

Lina : I like the park, but I think it would be nice to go on a ferry on the river. Would you like to do that ?

Injy : Yes, I'd love to ! Why don't we meet by the bridge ?

Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Visit El-Orman Garden !

- Learn about how Khedive Ismail[1] asked a famous French gardener[2] to plant a forest in the nineteenth century[3].
- Find out how the Orman Garden became famous in 1910.

Check Vocabulary

(1) الخديوى إسماعيل | (2) بستانى / جنايني | (3) قرن (١٠٠ عام)

- Learn how the gardens protect many important plants and trees.
- See plants, trees and flowers that grow nowhere else[4] in Egypt

El-Dokki Street,
Giza

Check Vocabulary

(4) أينما في مكان آخر

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Hi Azza

I'm looking forward to[1] our trip[2] to the El Orman Garden[3]! The garden opens at 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get there by car. What time **shall we come** to get you? The online reviews[4] are fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to see. Make sure[5] that you wear comfortable shoes[6]!

I'm **sending you** a map of the garden. You can see wild flowers[7] and plants from **all over** the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. What would **you like** to see first ?

We could bring[8] some food with us or we could go to a nearby[9] café for lunch. What would you prefer ? There is also a lovely[10] shop near the garden that sells pottery[11] and jewellery[12] !

See you Saturday,

Reem

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتطلع الى	(2) رحلة قصيرة	(3) حديقة الأورمان	(4) حقيقة نادرة	(5) يتأكد من	(6) حذاء مريح
(7) الزهور البرية	(8) يحضر	(9) قريب	(10) جميل - مذهل	(11) أوانى فخارية	(12) مجوهرات

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

From : Munir

To : Hazem

Dear Hazem

Thank you for asking **me to visit** the lake. I would love to go there ! I **will be** ready[1] at 7 am, so you can come to get me any time after that.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جاهز

Yes. I have some comfortable shoes. I don't mind walking round the lake. I like walking in the country[2]. To answer your question, perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot.

My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. I'm sure there will be enough for us to share![3]

See you on Saturday.

Yours, Munir

Check Vocabulary

(2) الريف (3) يشارك

• on Lesson 7 WB page 78

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. On weekdays, there are two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus is at 7 am and the second one leaves late in the afternoon. My father doesn't take the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. At the weekend, there is only one bus, which goes at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it arrives in the city at 8.30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

Videoscript

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through[1] the city and there are lots of things to see and do.

Many people visit the Aswan Botanical Garden when they are in the city because it is very peaceful here. The garden is on El Nabatat Island[2], opposite the famous Elephantine Island[3] on the River Nile.

It's open every day from 8 o'clock in the morning to five or six o'clock in the afternoon. To visit, you can go by ferry[4] or even by felucca[5].

Another place to visit in Aswan is the Nubian Museum[6]. It is between Al-Fanadek Street and El Sadat Road. Some visitors[7] to Aswan take a taxi to visit the museum.

You can visit the museum every day. It opens in the morning at 9 o'clock and it closes at one o'clock for lunch. It opens again at five o'clock until nine or ten o'clock in the evening.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعبر خلال (2) جزيرة النباتات (3) جزيرة فيله (4) عن طريق العبارة (5) عن طريق الفلوكة (6) متحف النوبة (7) زائرين

People come here to learn all about the life, culture(8) and history of the people in Nubia(9).
After they visit the museum, some people take a boat to visit a real Nubian village near Aswan.
What can people see and do in your town or city ? Are there any botanical gardens or other interesting places to visit ?

Check Vocabulary

(8) ثقافة (9) أرض النوبة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 indoor (adj) / indoors (adv) - outdoor (adj) / outdoors (adv)

تستخدم كصفة و يأتى بعدها اسم

adj. indoor / outdoor + noun اسم — داخلى / خارجى

ex.: - Handball and volleyball are indoor sports.

تستخدم كظرف (حال) و تأتى فى نهاية الجملة (بعد الفعل)

adv. indoors / outdoors + فى نهاية الجملة — بالداخل / بالخارج

ex.: - Football is played outdoors.
- Waleed is playing chess indoors.

2 open

* open (ed) (v) , (adj) — يفتح - مفتوح

ex.: - Sara opens her shop at 7 am. (فعل)
- Shops are usually open till 12 at night in summer. (صفة)

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

meet up	يلتقى - يقابل	think about	يفكر فى
agree with	يتفق مع	go on a ferry	يذهب باستخدام المعدية
disagree politely	يرفض باسلوب مهذب	on the river	فى النهر
play a computer game	يلعب لعبة حاسوب	for lunch	لوجبة الغذاء
agree on an activity	يوافق على القيام بنشاط	check work	يفحص عمل

give an answer	يعطى إجابة	Thank you for asking.	شكرًا على السؤال.
reply to	يرد على	That sounds like a great idea.	هذه تبدو فكرة رائعة.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. No one liked Adel's ..... about the trip. All his friends disagreed.
   a. suggestion b. problem c. information d. pool
2. I need comfortable shoes today because I'm going to walk ..... .
   a. indoors b. outdoors c. outdoor d. indoor
3. My mother has some beautiful ..... , which she got from her mother when she got married.
   a. jewellery b. kitchens c. rooms d. countries

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

4. WB The children played ..... today because it was very hot outside.
   a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. indoor
5. WB Hisham was born in 1981, which was in the last ..... .
   a. decision b. year c. century d. area
6. SB Be careful in that shop. It sells ..... which breaks easily.
   a. pottery b. jewellery c. buildings d. chemicals

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. We need to ..... to meet up next week.
   a. keep b. arrange c. bring d. listen
8. My friend, Ali ..... me to his sister's wedding party.
   a. invited b. invented c. deleted d. replied
9. You should speak to old people ..... .
   a. impolitely b. politely c. quickly d. angrily
10. A/An ..... is a person who works in a garden as a job.
    a. passenger b. guide c. gardener d. volunteer
11. My final ..... is to join the Faculty of Arts.
    a. invitation b. invention c. feeling d. decision

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. What time are we going to meet ..... tomorrow ?
    a. out b. up c. down d. into
13. Thank you ..... asking me to come to the party.
    a. of b. about c. at d. for
14. Which computer game would you like to ..... , Basim ?
    a. play b. make c. do d. take
15. The decision my brother has ..... wasn't easy.
    a. done b. made c. given d. sent
16. My mother found the bakery ..... , so she bought fresh bread.
    a. open b. opened c. closed d. closet

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms — متضادات ومترادفات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym /Opposite المضاد
outside خارجي	outdoor	inside داخلي
outdoors خارج المنزل	outside	indoors داخل المنزل
politely بطريقة مهذبة	kindly - nicely	impolitely بطريقة غير مهذبة
remember يتذكر	memorize	forget ينسى
agree يوافق	accept / allow	disagree/refuse يرفض

Prefix & Suffix — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
im –	يعطي عكس المعنى	impolitely بطريقة غير مهذبة
– ern	يكون صفة	northern شمالي southern جنوبي eastern شرقي western غربي

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The synonym of "politely" is ..... .
   a. hardly b. impolitely c. excitedly d. kindly

2. The word "outdoor" is the opposite of " ".
   a. outdoors b. outside c. indoor d. indoors
3. Memorize has the same meaning of " ".
   a. forgive b. forget c. reply d. remember
4. The noun "north" can be an adjective by adding .....
   a. -er b. -ern c. -ing d. -ed
5. To make the negative form of "politely", we add the prefix .....
   a. in- b. un- c. em- d. im-

III Language

1 To make suggestions
لتقديم الاقتراحات

Shall we
Why don't you/we
Let's + **inf.** .....
Would you like to
+ **inf.** المصدر ..... ?

- هل يمكننا أن .. ؟
- لما لا ... ؟
- هيا بنا ...
- هل تود أن ... ؟

ex. - Shall we go to the swimming pool ?
- Why don't we go to the park ?
- Let's go to the museum.
- Would you like to meet up this evening ?

How / What + **about** + **noun/inf. + ing** .... ?
ماذا عن / ما رأيك فى .... ؟

ex. - What about going to the zoo ?
- How about the cinema ?

2 To express preference
للتعبير عن التفضيل

Sub. فاعل + **'d prefer to** + **inf.** .....

ex. - I'd prefer to go to somewhere indoors.

Sub. فاعل + **prefer** + **inf.** + **ing** .....

ex. - I prefer going to somewhere indoors.

Sub. فاعل + **prefer** + **noun** اسم **/inf. + ing**

to **noun** اسم **/inf. + ing**

ex. - I prefer playing football to playing basketball.
- He prefers tea to coffee.

It would be nice to + inf. مصدر الفعل .....

ex. - It would be nice to visit our uncle's farm.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A :** ..... don't we meet in front of the museum ?
B : OK. That's a good idea.
a. What b. When c. Why d. Where
2. What about ..... to the zoo ?
a. go b. going c. goes d. went
3. Salma 'd prefer ..... pizza with chicken.
a. to eat b. eating c. eats d. ate
4. It would be nice ..... see this film. It's interesting.
a. to b. for c. at d. with

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	Why don't we ... ? الجملة تعبر عن تقديم اقتراح لذا تكون الإجابة
2	b	(What about) يتبعها اسم أو (inf. + ing) الجملة تعبر عن تقديم اقتراح والصيغة
3	a	صيغة الفعل ('d prefer) يتبعها to + inf.
4	a	الجملة تعبر عن التفضيل لذلك تستخدم الصيغة (It would be nice) ويتبعها to + inf.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB & WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB ..... don't you come to my house ?
a. Who b. What c. Why d. Where

2. WB ..... about the park ?
a. How b. Why c. When d. Where

3. SB What time shall we ..... to get you ?
a. comes b. come c. coming d. came

4. WB Why don't we ..... by the bridge ?
a. meet b. meeting c. to meet d. meets

5. SB What ..... Reem like to see at the museum ?
a. can b. would c. shall d. be

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

6. **A :** Would you like ..... some juice ? **B :** Sure.
a. to drinking b. to drink c. drinks d. drink

7. Why ..... we play football together ? - That's a great idea.
a. don't b. didn't c. haven't d. mustn't

8. I'd prefer ..... tea without milk.
a. drinks b. to drinking c. drinking d. to drink

9. It would ..... nice to play some sport.
a. am b. is c. are d. be

10. What about ..... a cup of green tea with me today ?
a. have b. having c. to have d. had

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

1. SB ..... (When) about the museum ?
2. SB I'd prefer to ..... (going) somewhere indoors.
3. WB I think it would ..... (is) nice to go on a ferry.

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

4. Where would you like ..... (going) ?
5. Let's ..... (had) dinner at the Italian restaurant.
6. They prefer ..... (read) in the library to home.
7. Shall we ..... (playing) in the garden ?

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق (Master Your Term) Part 2

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٥٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- A trip to El-Orman Garden.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What can Reem buy at a nearby shop ?

- .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- **Gusssing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية من النص

3. The expression **"looking forward to"** in the text means .....

a. drive b. hope c. donate d. delete

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

"A visit to the El-Orman Garden" زيارة إلى حديقة الأورمان

1. I like visiting the gardens.
١. أحب زيارة الحدائق.

2. El-Orman Garden are very big and there's a lot to see.
٢. إن حديقة الأورمان كبيرة جدًا وبها الكثير لتراه.

3. You can see wild flowers and plants from all over the country there.
٣. يمكنك رؤية الزهور البرية والنباتات من كل أنحاء الريف هناك.

4. There is also a small lake and a museum.
٤. يوجد بها أيضًا بحيرة صغيرة ومتحف.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

What - bring - prefer - jewellery - exhibition - Why

1. I'd ..... to eat pizza with mushrooms.
2. I saw a lot of ..... in the museum.
3. In the museum, there is a great ..... about Egypt.
4. We have to ..... food with us for the picnic.
5. ..... about drinking mango juice ?

تدريب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"The El-Orman Garden"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Making suggestions :

تقديم اقتراحات :

Suggestion	Response
1. Would you like to meet up tomorrow ? هل تود أن نتقابل غدًا ؟	Agreeing الموافقة
2. Shall we go to the park, then ? هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة حينئذ ؟	I'd love to. أود ذلك.
3. How/What about the museum ? ماذا عن المتحف ؟	It's/That's a good idea. انها فكرة جيدة.
4. Why don't you come to my house ? لما لا تأتي لمنزلي ؟	Disagreeing عدم الموافقة
	I'm not sure. أنا لست متأكدًا.
	I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors. أفضل الذهاب لمكان داخلي (مكان مغلق)
	It would be nice to play computer games. انه من اللطيف أن نلعب العاب الكمبيوتر

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

A woman, at the train station, is asking about the train to Ismailia

A woman : What time does the next train to Ismailia leave ?

A booking clerk : (1) ..... .

A woman : (2) ..... ?

A booking clerk : It takes 2 hours.

A woman : Can I book a ticket, please ?

A booking clerk : (3) ..... . Single or return ?

A woman : Single, please. (4) ..... ?

A booking clerk : It's seventy pounds.

A woman : (5) ..... .

A booking clerk : Thank you. Here's your ticket.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB We could go to a nearby ..... for lunch.
   a. entrance b. hall c. library d. café
2. Shady bought some pottery ..... a lovely shop.
   a. for b. with c. from d. of
3. The metro is one of the most ..... means of transport, so I often take it.
   a. harmful b. comfortable c. crowded d. expensive
4. Amr ..... a suggestion to have an ice cream and I agreed.
   a. did b. went c. made d. brought
5. A ..... is a period of 100 years.
   a. decade b. center c. centre d. century
6. ..... about going to the museum ?
   a. What b. When c. Where d. Why

7. Chess is a / an ..... game.
   a. indoor b. outside c. bored d. careful

8. Let's ..... a boat on the lake.
   a. takes b. taking c. take d. took

9. A : ..... we go to the zoo ? B : That would be great.
   a. Shall b. Should c. Are d. Were

10. WB Thank you ..... asking me to visit the lake with you.
   a. on b. in c. to d. for

3 Complete the text with words from the list :

get - opens - comfortable - nearby - see

I'm looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Garden. It (1) ..... at 9 a.m and it takes about an hour to (2) ..... there by car. The online reviews about the garden is fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to (3) ..... . Make sure that you wear (4) ..... shoes.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB Why ..... (doesn't) we meet at the park ?
2. WB Would you like to ..... (meets) up tomorrow, Lina ?
3. WB I'd ..... (prefers) to go somewhere outside.
4. SB Shall we ..... (went) to the park, then ?

5 Write an email of about (110) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Sara inviting her to the exhibition with you and your family. Your name is Alaa and your email address is alaa22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sara26@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

ثم تقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد

ثم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى من الصفحة التالية

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ... في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرا على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary تعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ peaceful
- ☐ Science Museum
- ☐ aquarium
- ☐ Space Exhibition
- ☐ especially
- ☐ monuments
- ☐ platform
- ☐ comfortable

2 Read and write sentences using present simple for scheduled events, prepositions of time and prepositions of place

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام المضارع البسيط فى المواعيد الزمنية وحروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت وحروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

- ☐ The train arrives in Qena at 11 pm
- ☐ How long does it take to reach Aswan ?
- ☐ On Fridays, I visit my grandparents.
- ☐ The sports center is on the corner of the road.

3 Make suggestions

اقدم اقتراحات

- ☐ Would you like to visit Luxor ?
- ☐ Shall we go to the aquarium ?
- ☐ It would be nice to visit our uncle.
- ☐ Why don't we go to the sports centre ?

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر

جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 1

SB page 11 WB page 78

Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية
sports centre	مركز رياضى
monuments	آثار
peaceful	هادئ
Space Exhibition	معرض الفضاء
ferry	معدية
comfortable	مريح
passengers	ركاب/مسافرون
railway	سكة حديد
jewellery	مجوهرات
century	قرن
pottery	أوانى فخارية
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
borrow	يستعير/يستلف
platform	رصيف قطار
on the corner	على الناصية

Language

1. Present simple tense
زمن المضارع البسيط

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط فى الجداول والمواعيد الزمنية.

We use the present simple tense for scheduled events.

* What time does the film start ?
* It starts at 7 pm.

2. Prepositions of Time
حروف جر الخاصة بالوقت.

- تستخدم مع بعض التعبيرات الزمنية مثل :

- on Saturdays / Sundays mornings
- at weekends / at night
- on holidays / in the morning
- at the weekends

3. Prepositions of Place
حروف جر الخاصة بالمكان

- between / on the corner / next to / opposite
- The bank is opposite the museum.

Speaking

1. Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

1. Go straight on 30 metres, then turn right.
2. Go past the botanical gardens, the aquarium is on the corner.
3. Take the second road, the museum is on the left.

2. Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة جداول المواعيد والمواصلات العامة.

- What time does the next train leave ?
* It leaves at 9 pm.

3. Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

- Would you like to meet up this evening ?
- Shall we go to the zoo ?
- Why don't we play football ?

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

معالجة جديدة "للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ **Your city / What you do at the weekend / Travelling by train / A trip to a museum**

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة للاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية/ رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- What things do you like in your city ?
- What are your favourite activities at weekends ?
- What kinds of museums do tourists prefer ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Travelling	Entertainment places	Tourism
- journey	- restaurant	- exhibition
- tram	- museum	- monuments
- train	- library	- pottery
- metro	- café	- jewellery
- passengers	- aquarium	- objects
- ferry	- sports centre	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- The library is ..... the bank.
- Let's ..... in / at / on ..... .
- At the weekend, I ..... .
- It would be nice to ..... .

Paragraph

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

➲ **Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :**

"The city you live in"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضوع اختبار) فى كل وحدة والتى تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج

unit 1

1. Vocabulary

كلمات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضوع اختبار :

botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	peaceful	هادئ / مسالم
sports centre	مركز رياضى	green valleys	وديان خضراء
library	مكتبة	tram	ترام
restaurant	مطعم	passengers	ركاب / مسافرون
monuments	آثار	exhibition	معرض
traffic	حركة المرور	pottery	صناعة الفخار - أوانى فخارية

2. Language

تراكيب لغوية هامة قد تكون موضوع اختبار :

1. The first metro train leaves[1] at 8:20.
2. On[2] Friday afternoon, I often go to Lake Timsah.
3. What time does the film start[3] ?
4. The chair is between[4] the table and the door.

Check Language

(1) نقول هنا مضارع بسيط يعبر عن ميعاد ثابت
(2) نستخدم حرف الجر (On) يسبق أيام الأسبوع
(3) طريقة استفهام بكلمة إستفهام فى زمن المضارع البسيط
(Q - word + do / does + subj + inf.)
(4) between حرف جر من حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان تستخدم بين شيئين.

3. Speaking

أسئلة لغوية هامة قد تكون موضوع اختبار

Questions	Answers
1. What type of energy do trams use ?	- Trams use electricity.
2. Which platform does the train leave from ?	- Platform 7.
3. What about spending the weekend in Alexandria ?	- It's a great idea.

General Exercises on unit 1

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nabil is talking to his mother about his first day at school.

Mother : Hello, Nabil. How was your first day at school ?

Nabil : (1) ..... , but many students were absent غائبين.

Mother : (2) ..... ?

Nabil : Because of COVID 19. It's very dangerous.

Mother : (3) ..... ?

Nabil : Yes, I've washed my hands already.

Mother : What did your teachers advise you to do ?

Nabil : (4) ..... .

Mother : Do you have a mask ?

Nabil : (5) ..... . I have just taken it off.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I am Samy and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. Ismailia is a part of history. In the past, people in Ismailia saved their city sacrifice themselves for their homes.

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Ismailia is peaceful, but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially at the weekend. I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. **It** is a beautiful lake with beaches around it. We can play on the beach. We can catch fish. There are some interesting museums in Ismailia ! My favourite place is the Natural Science Museum because I'm interested in animals. In this museum, you can enjoy and have a lot of scientific information about animals and plants. The weather in Ismailia is fine all the year. So, you can enjoy your stay here. The hotels are clean, comfortable and not expensive. It is a good place to go to at the weekend.

a. **Answer the following questions :**

1. Explain why Ismailia is a good place to spend a holiday. Mention two points.

.....

2. How are the buildings in Ismailia attractive ? Mention two reasons.

.....

3. Do you think your stay in Ismailia will be comfortable ? Why / Why not ?

.....

b. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The main idea of the passage is .....
   a. Port Said b. The Suez Canal c. Ismailia d. Egypt
5. What does the underlined word "<u>It</u>" refer to ? .....
   a. The weekend b. Lake Timsah
   c. City d. Ismailia
6. People in Ismailia are .....
   a. friendly b. unhelpful c. cruel d. interested

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB Why don't you ..... to my house ?
   a. borrow b. send c. spend d. come
2. What will you do ..... the weekend ?
   a. of b. in c. at d. down
3. Alexandria is one of the most ..... cities in Egypt. I enjoy visiting it.
   a. attractive b. boring c. crowded d. exited
4. WB A / An ..... is a place where you can borrow and read books.
   a. office b. library c. sports centre d. airport
5. WB The place where you can see beautiful fish is a / an .....
   a. café b. botanical garden
   c. bank d. aquarium
6. SB The ..... shows how to travel by metro.
   a. map b. station c. library d. restaurant
7. To cross the canal, they used a .....
   a. car b. bus c. train d. ferry

8. Please be ..... when you carry these bags !
   a. careless b. excited c. bored d. careful
9. When ..... ?
   a. does the museum close b. the museum closes
   c. the museum does close d. does the museum closes
10. We don't know when the next bus ..... . We are waiting for it.
   a. will arrive b. arrives c. arrived d. is arriving

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When ..... (do) the film you are watching end ?
2. The librarian is waiting for me to leave. The library ..... (close) after 25 minutes.
3. SB The film hasn't finished. It ..... (finish) at nine o'clock.
4. We are late for the first train, so we can take the second train. It ..... (leave) after an hour.

5 Complete the sentences with these words :

including - Station - on - get - parts

Some people think that Sydney in Australia has the best transport in the world. Why ? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all (1) ..... of the city. If you want to (2) ..... to somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from Central (3) ..... to many places (4) ..... the airport.

6 Choose the correct word :

1. The train **arrives / will arrive** in Luxor at 23:15.
2. My father **didn't / doesn't** take the early bus, because it is very slow.
3. WB The children played **indoors / outdoors** today, because it was very hot outside.

7 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"What you do on one day of the week"

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 1 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. The children played indoors today,	a. [ ] calm and quiet.
2. Trams are electric,	b. [ ] It is a very peaceful city.
3. "Especially" means	c. [ ] takes people across water.
4. A ferry	d. [ ] so they are better for the environment.
5. You can't hear any traffic here.	e. [ ] because it was very hot outside.
	f. [ ] more than usual.

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Salma usually visits her grandparents **in** the weekend. (.....)
2. The first metro train **leave** at 5.30 am. (.....)
3. You can see beautiful fish at the **sports centre** . (.....)
4. The sports centre is **opposite** the aquarium and the hospital. (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'd prefer ..... somewhere indoors.
   a. going b. to go c. go d. goes
2. Adam ..... to his school early every day.
   a. arrives b. reaches c. gets d. interests
3. It's so peaceful out here in the country. The word "peaceful" means ..... .
   a. noisy b. terrible c. horrible d. calm
4. I learned to swim ..... the age of seven.
   a. in b. at c. on d. of
5. Bread and cakes are made of ..... .
   a. flowers b. floors c. flour d. floats

UNIT 2

Let's go shopping

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 79:85

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An online support message : an advert for handicrafts; online reviews
- **Writing :**
  Emails asking for and giving information about handcrafts
- **Listening :**
  A radio advert ; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint
- **Language :** both / and , either / or , neither / nor
- **Life skills :** Self-management : Keeping calm;
- **Critical thinking :**
  Evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

الاتقان الوحدة
- للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى

LESSONS

1 & 2

SB pages 12 : 15 WB pages 79 & 80

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

coffee machine (n)	ماكينة صنع القهوة	discount (n)	خصم - تخفيض
kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)	deal (n)	اتفاق - صفقة
microwave (n)	مايكروويف (فرن)	speaker (n)	سماعة (مكبر صوت)
toaster (n)	محمصة خبز كهربائية	smart (adj)	ذكى
advert (n)	إعلان	shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق - متجر
special offer (n)	عرض خاص	sale (n)	تخفيض - أوكازيون

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 79

magazine (n)	مجلة	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل البضائع
poster (n)	ملصق إعلانات	free (adj)	مجاني
website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت	item (n)	عنصر
oven (n)	فرن	useful (adj)	مفيد
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	price (n)	ثمن - سعر
quality (n)	جودة	fridge (n)	ثلاجة
normally (adv)	عادة	advertise (d) (v)	يعلن
city centre shop (n)	متجر وسط المدينة	fresh (adj)	طازج - منعش
leather industry (n)	صناعة الجلود	compare (d) (v)	يقارن

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

customer (n)	زبون - عميل	shopping centre (n)	مركز تجارى
shop assistant (n)	عامل فى محل تجارى	survey (n)	استبيان / دراسة بحثية
market (n)	سوق تجارية	column (n)	عامود - خانة

headphones (n)	سماعة الأذن	table (n)	ترابيزة
razor (n)	ماكينة حلاقة	Mediterranean Sea (n)	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
natural (adj)	طبيعي	tourists (n)	سياح

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المعنى	Present	Past	Past Participle
	المضارع	الماضي	التصريف الثالث V3
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
give	يعطي	gave	given
tell	يقول	told	told
come	يأتي	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

ملحوظة: هذه التعريفات مجموعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات معاً
التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

coffee machine	you can make a hot drink with this	ماكينة صنع القهوة
kettle	you can boil water with this	غلاية
toaster	you can make bread warm with this	محمصة خبز كهربائية
microwave	you can cook things quickly with this	ميكروويف (فرن)

Collocations

متلازمات لغوية

	a discount	به تخفيض	spend	money	ينفق نقود
have	much homework	لديه واجب كثير		the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
	money	لديه نقود		the train	يستقل القطار
offer	a deal	يعرض صفقة / اتفاق	get	a drink	يحصل على مشروب
play	music	يشغل موسيقى		a poster	يحصل على ملصق
	a sport	يمارس رياضة			

II Listening

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Voice : Do you love music ? Do you want the latest technology[1] ? We have the best headphones[2] now at audioworld . We are selling them in red, which is our most popular[3] colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the special price[4] of only 1500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today !

Check Vocabulary

(1) أحدث تكنولوجيا | (2) سماعات الرأس | (3) محبوب - مشهور | (4) سعر خاص

• on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Shop Assistant : Hello, sir. Can I help you ?

Customer : Yes, please, I'm looking for[1] a new TV for my living room.

Shop Assistant : OK, no problem. You're lucky we have lots of deals[2] at the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big discount[3].

Customer : Great. Are they smart TVs ?

Shop Assistant : No, sorry. Neither of these are smart TVs, but this one over there is and that is also on special offer[4].

Customer : Hmm, that one is a bit smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How much is this bigger one ?

Shop Assistant : Oh, yes! That's a great TV. That's new in the shop this week, so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يبحث عن | (2) صفقات | (3) خصم - تخفيض | (4) عرض خاص

Customer : That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price ?

Shop Assistant : Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either a free speaker(5) or get a free films deal with that one.

Customer : Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think this one will look great in my living room. I'll take it !

Check Vocabulary

(5) سماعة مجانية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 sale / on sale / for sale

* **sale (n)** أوكازيون (بيع البضائع بأسعار مخفضة)

ex.: - There's a big sale now at JD Home Store.

* **on sale** (بضاعة) معروضة للبيع بسعر مخفض

ex.: - Smart TVs are on sale at this shop. You can buy them for lower prices.

* **for sale** للبيع (معروض للبيع)

ex.: - This house is for sale. His owner wants to sell it.

2 deal (v) , (n)

* **deal (dealt - dealt) (v)** يتعامل

ex.: - The book deals with education.

* **deal (n)** صفقة (شراء شيء ما بسعر منخفض جدًا)

ex.: - She got a good deal on her new house.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

start with	يبدأ بـ	on special offer	في عرض خاص
deal of the day	صفقة اليوم	things are the usual price	أشياء بالسعر المعتاد
at the best prices	بأفضل الأسعار	wait for deals or discounts	ينتظر العروض أو التخفيضات
things for the house	أدوات منزلية	the difference between ... and ...	الاختلاف بين ... و ...
ask ... about	يسأل ... عن		
adverts from	إعلانات من ...		

ask for information	يطلب معلومات	What type of ..... ?	ما نوع ... ؟
give ... information	يقدم معلومات	choose to + inf.	يختار أن
deal / discount on	صفقة / تخفيض على	look for	يبحث عن
spend much money on	ينفق أموال كثيرة على ...	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
on the Mediterranean Sea	على البحر الأبيض المتوسط	shop online	يتسوق عبر الانترنت
		watch films from the internet	يشاهد افلام من الانترنت

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's easy to make coffee with the ..... .
   a. kettle b. microwave c. toaster d. coffee machine
2. There's a special ..... to have free one when you buy two pieces.
   a. shop b. offer c. test d. over
3. The new chemist's gives 20% ..... on shampoo and sun cream.
   a. discount b. deal c. information d. count
4. I want to buy a/an ..... to play music on my birthday.
   a. oven b. microwave c. speaker d. website
5. This ..... is from a website about the new capital.
   a. wave b. shop c. kettle d. advert

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB You can make bread warm with the ..... .
   a. kettle b. microphone c. toaster d. speaker
7. WB Osama's family have a/an ..... TV. They can now watch films from the internet.
   a. old b. smart c. free d. fast
8. WB You can cook things quickly with the ..... .
   a. microwave b. kettle c. toaster d. fridge
9. SB You are a ..... . Ask the customer what they want to buy.
   a. speaker b. patient c. shop assistant d. programmer

El-Moasser Exercises

10 They offer free ____ on their trucks inside Cairo.
a delivery b survey c shopping d park

11 Alexandria is called "the bride of the ____ Sea".
a Red b Mediterranean c Black d Caribbean

12 We have a / an ____ offer. Don't miss it.
a normal b usual c regular d special

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13 Mum always prefers to buy things ____ the house.
a for b of c on d about

14 Can you ____ me information about this machine ?
a make b give c do d have

15 She always buys many things ____ special offers.
a of b for c at d on

16 What's the ____ of the day in Carrefour ?
a email b deal c type d magazine

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Synonym	Antonym
sell	exchange trade	buy
cheap	inexpensive	expensive
free	unpaid - without money	paid
ask	inquire	give reply
special	important particular	usual common

Prefixes & Suffixes

Suffix / Prefix	Function	Examples
- ful		
- ist		specialist tourist
macro-		
ir-		regular

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

1. The opposite of the verb "buy" is " ..... ".
   a. solve b. sail c. sell d. soil
2. The word "free" can be the opposite of ..... .
   a. voluntary b. paid c. chargeable d. changeable
3. To give the opposite of the word "expensive", we add the prefix ..... .
   a. un– b. in– c. ir– d. il–
4. "Microbus" is a/an ..... bus.
   a. big b. expensive c. fast d. small
5. The word "inquire" gives the same meaning of ..... .
   a. reply b. ask c. take d. give

III Language

Remember تذكر

1 What's an adjective ? ما هى الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتى بعد (verb to be)

ex. - It is a small cat.
- This bag is big.

2 Comparative adjectives : المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة :

1 Short adjectives
الصفات القصيرة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.

2 Long adjectives
الصفات الطويلة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than

- beautiful

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالًا من

ex. - Kettles are more expensive than computers.

- Reading is more interesting than video games.

١ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

٢ يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

large → larger / close → closer

٣ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger
- thin → thinner
- hot → hotter
- fit → fitter

٤ الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :

- easy → easier
- happy → happier
- lazy → lazier
- healthy → healthier

ex. - Milk is healthier than pizza.

3 Superlative adjectives : المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (صيغة التفضيل)

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

١ (the adj. صفة + est) :

- fast → the fastest
- old → the oldest

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

- the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة

- the most/the least beautiful

الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا

- the most/the least **dangerous**
الأكثر / الأقل خطورة

ex. - The most useful thing in the kitchen is the fridge.

- Which item is the most expensive ?

- Visiting Luxor is the most exciting idea for me.

٢ (**adj. + st**) صفة قصيرة منتهية بـ (**e**) (**the**)

- large → the large**st**
- close → the close**st**

٣ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (**the... + est**) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the big**gest**
- thin → the thin**nest**
- hot → the hot**test**
- fit → the fit**test**

٤ الصفات المنتهية بحرف (**y**) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (**y**) إلى (**iest**) :

- easy → the easi**est**
- happy → the happi**est**
- lazy → the lazi**est**
- healthy → the healthi**est**

ex. - This puzzle is the easiest one.

4 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms :
صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة :

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 Adj.		2 Comparative		3 Superlative	
bad	سيئ	worse than	أسوأ من	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther than further than	أبعد من أبعد من	the farthest the furthest	الأبعد الأبعد
good	جيد	better than	أفضل من	the best	الأفضل
late	متأخر	later than latter than	أكثر تأخرًا من الأخير / الثانى من	the latest the last	الأكثر تأخرًا الأخير
little	قليل (الكمية)	less than	أقل من	the least	الأقل
many much	كثير (العدد) كثير (الكمية)	more than	أكثر من	the most	الأكثر

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Kettles are ..... expensive than tablets.
   a. less b. little c. the less d. the least
2. Which book is the ..... useful ? – The science book.
   a. more b. most c. less d. much
3. Adel is taller ..... Sameh.
   a. nor b. or c. as d. than

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	a	عند المقارنة بين أثنين مع الصفات الطويلة مثل expensive نستخدم صيغة المقارنة الآتية less (adj) صفة ..... than
2	b	عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين مع الصفات الطويلة نستخدم صيغة التفضيل الآتية the most + الصفة .....
3	d	عند المقارنة بين اثنين مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم صيغة المقارنة الآتية (adj + er) + than

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The ..... useful thing in my kitchen is the fridge.
   a. more b. most c. as d. less
2. SB It is ..... to buy clothes in shops than online.
   a. best b. good c. better d. the best
3. WB The second coffee machine is ..... than the first one.
   a. smaller b. smallest c. small d. the smallest
4. WB Which item do you think is the ..... expensive ?
   a. little b. less c. least d. more

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Which place is the ..... in Cairo to visit ?
   a. nice b. nicest c. nicer d. most nice
6. The giraffe is taller ..... the camel.
   a. then b. than c. this d. that
7. No one is ..... than Ahmed in the class.
   a. strong b. strongest c. as strong d. stronger
8. Shopping online is ..... before.
   a. easy b. as easy c. easiest d. easier than

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The supermarket is the ..... (busy) shop in my town.
2. WB Red is ..... (most) popular colour for our toasters this year.
3. WB My new phone is much ..... (easy) to use than my old one.
4. WB The film was terrible. I think it was the ..... (worse) film I've ever seen !

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Ayman's car is (most) ..... expensive than his uncle's.
6. Youssef is the (stronger) ..... boy in the class.
7. Basketball is (least) ..... exciting than football.
8. Mohamed Salah is the (better) ..... player in England this year.

2 both – either – neither – none :

1) both .... and / both of ١) كلا / كلتا / كلاً من

- **Use both ... (and) to mean this thing and another thing.**

تستخدم (both) عادة عند للتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين أو صفتين أو فعلين .. إلخ لتعطى معنى هذا الشئ والشئ الاخر

ex. - Both the laptop and the microwave are in the sale.
- Both of the sisters are good at maths.
- She is both polite and beautiful.

Note that : : لاحظ أنه

١. يُمكن أن تستخدم (both) كصفة أو ضمير :

ex. - We don't have enough money for both. (ضمير)
- Both bags have flowers on them. (صفة)

٢. يأتى بعد (both of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (you – us – them) أو ضمائر الاشارة الجمع (these – those)

ex. - I like both of them.
- Both of those windows are broken.

٣. يُمكن أن تستخدم ضمائر الجمع قبل (both) :

ex. - We should choose something that we both like.

2) either ... or ... ٢) إما ... أو ....

• **Use either ... (or) to mean this thing or another thing.**

تستخدم للتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين أو صفتين أو فعلين ... الخ . لتعطى معنى هذا الشئ أو الآخر.

ex. - You can ask either Amany or Reda. They both are free now. (شخصين)
- You can get either a free speaker or a free film. (شيئين)
- On Saturday, Hany either visits his cousins or goes shopping with his mother. (فعلين)
- He is either sleepy or sick. (صفتين)

Note that : : لاحظ أنه

١. تُستخدم (either of) وليس (either) قبل ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you – them - us) أو ضمائر الاشارة الجمع (these - those).

ex. - Do either of you go shopping every day ?
- Either of these films are fine.

٢. عندما تُستخدم (either ... or ...) لربط فاعلين فإن الفعل يكون مفرد أو جمع حسب الفاعل الثاني.

ex. - Either Omar or his sisters have my book.
- Either my sisters or my brother is going to have a dog.

3) neither ... nor ... ٣) لا ... ولا ...

• **Use neither ... (nor) to mean not this thing or another thing.**

تستخدم للتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين أو صفتين أو فعلين وتعطى معنى (النفى) ليس هذا ولا ذاك.

ex. - Neither Dareen nor Malak speaks French. (اسمين)
- This shop is neither interesting nor cheap. (صفتين)
- You can neither smoke nor eat in this office. (فعلين)

Note that : : لاحظ أنه

تُستخدم (neither of) وليس (neither) قبل ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you – them - us) وضمائر الإشارة الجمع (these - those):

ex. - Neither of them are the right colour !
- Neither of those necklaces are cheap.

عندما تُستخدم (neither ... nor ...) لربط فاعلين فإن الفعل يكون مفرد أو جمع حسب الفاعل الثاني:

ex. - Neither my mother nor my sister is here.
- Neither my brother nor my parents are here.

4) none (of) ...

- **Use none to mean no one or no item.**

تستخدم (none of) لتعنى لا احد أو لا شئ ويمكن ان يتبعها اسم جمع او ضمائر مفعول جمع أو صفات إشارة الجمع (these - those):

ex. - None of us want to buy these phones.
- None of them work.
- None of my friends go shopping every day.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salma said she would phone me, but she ..... emailed nor phoned.
   a. both b. other c. neither d. each
2. Ali and Toka could get into the flat because ..... of them had a door key.
   a. neither b. both c. either d. none
3. I can either play tennis ..... watch TV.
   a. or b. nor c. every d. each

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	تستخدم (neither) لوجود (nor) للتعبير عن النفى
2	b	تستخدم (both) لأن الجملة تشير إلى جمع (Ali and Toka) والجملة فى صيغة الإثبات
3	a	تستخدم (or) لأن الجملة تعبر عن الاختيار لوجود (either)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB ..... the smart TV nor the large TV suited يناسب the customer.
   a. Both b. Either c. Neither d. Other
2. SB You can choose ..... soup or salad with your meal.
   a. neither b. either c. both d. all
3. WB My sister and I ..... like playing tennis.
   a. neither b. either c. every d. both

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. The new workers are lazy. ..... of them work hard.
   a. None b. Both c. Either d. Neither
5. ..... Marwa and Ghada like ice cream.
   a. Neither b. Either c. Both d. Nor
6. You can either go to school by bus ..... on foot.
   a. nor b. and c. or d. but

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB ..... (Neither) of those necklaces are nice. I can't decide which one to buy !
2. WB This shop is ..... (either) interesting nor cheap. Let's go to a different one.
3. SB ..... (No) of my friends go shopping every day.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. I want to buy both a shirt ..... (or) trousers.
5. Do ..... (neither) of you play football every day ?
6. None of ..... (we) go on foot.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة listening on lesson 1 SB page 13 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٧٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this text.

- .....

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. The text is about ..... .
   a. speakers b. headphones c. microwaves d. TVs
3. Their most popular colour is ..... .
   a. green b. red c. white d. yellow

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

"Items you have in your kitchen" أشياء تمتلكها فى مطبخك.

1. There are many items you can use in the kitchen.
   ١. يوجد العديد من الأجهزة والأشياء التى يمكن أن تستخدم فى المطبخ.
2. We can cook things quickly using the microwave.
   ٢. يمكن أن نطبخ الأشياء بسرعة باستخدام الميكروويف.
3. Also, we can keep things cold using the fridge.
   ٣. أيضًا يمكننا حفظ الأشياء باردة باستخدام الثلاجة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

both - speakers - kettle - nor - deal

1. You can get a free drink. There's a good ..... .
2. I bought some ..... for my phone to play music loudly.
3. Marwa and I ..... like eating fish.
4. You can boil water using the ..... .

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

- **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :**

"Things you and your friend like doing at the weekend"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Buying something in a shop :

شراء شىء فى محل :

Customer / Client زبون / عميل	Shop assistant بائع فى محل
1. Which items do you sell ? ١. ما الأجهزة التى تبيعونها ؟	- We have all the kitchen items. - لدينا كل أجهزة المطبخ.
2. Which items do you think is the most expensive ? ٢. أى الأجهزة تعتقد هى الأكثر ثمنًا / الأغلى ؟	- The microwave is the most expensive. - الميكروويف هو الأغلى ثمنًا.
3. Do you have a sale ? ٣. هل لديكم عرض على السلع ؟	- Yes, we have a big sale on toasters. - نعم. لدينا عرض كبير على أجهزة تحميص الخبز

Talking about things in the home :

التحدث عن أشياء فى المنزل :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Which useful items do you have in your house ? ١. أى الأجهزة مفيدة لديك بالمنزل ؟	- We have kettle, coffee machine, microwave, toaster, ... etc. - لدينا غلاية. ماكينة صنع القهوة. ميكروويف. محمصة خبز كهربائية ..... إلخ
2. Which items of them do you think is the most useful ? ٢. أى الأجهزة تعتقد هى الأكثر نفعًا ؟	- I think the microwave. - اعتقد أنه الميكروويف.
3. Which of the items do you think is the nicest to look at ? ٣. أى الأجهزة تعتقد إنه من الأفضل النظر إليها ؟	- I think the coffee machine. It's fantastic. - اعتقد أنها ماكينة صنع القهوة. إنها رائعة.
4. Do you normally buy things that are the usual price, or wait for deals or discounts ? ٤. هل من المعتاد بالنسبة لك شراء الأشياء بالسعر المعتاد أو أنك تنتظر صفقات أو خصومات ؟	- I always wait for deals or discounts because they save a lot of money for me. - أنا دائمًا أنتظر صفقات أو خصومات لأنها توفر الكثير من المال بالنسبة لى.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya is talking with Sama who bought a new mobile.

Aya : Hello, Sama. How are you ?

Sama : (1) ..... . I bought a new mobile phone.

Aya : Congratulations ! (2) ..... ?

Sama : I bought it yesterday.

Aya : (3) ..... ?

Sama : I bought it for 3000 LE.

Aya : Where did you buy it ?

Sama : (4) ..... .

Aya : My birthday is next week. I will buy a new mobile phone, too. Will you come with me ?

Sama : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father likes drinking his coffee while he is reading a/an ..... .
   a. interview b. magazine c. idea d. machine
2. Do you often buy things ..... special offer ?
   a. on b. in c. down d. up
3. When you want to buy something, you should be careful about the price and the ..... .
   a. ability b. possibility c. equality d. quality
4. WB I have bought some ..... for my phones, so I can play my music more loudly.
   a. adverts b. speakers c. necklaces d. columns
5. Start your morning ..... a fresh cup of coffee, made at home.
   a. from b. with c. to d. on

6. A / An ..... is used to make hot drinks.

a. coffee machine b. fridge

c. instrument d. office

7. To boil water, you need a ..... .

a. fan b. fridge c. kettle d. screen

8. Rana is ..... than Heba.

a. fastest b. fast as c. as fast d. faster

9. ..... Lama nor Soha can come shopping today. Both of them are busy.

a. Neither b. Either c. All d. Each

10. You can get either free speaker ..... a free film.

a. each b. also c. nor d. or

3 Complete the text with words from the list :

discount - cheaper - are - internet - smart

There is a big sale in the shopping mall in our area. All the clothes are (1)..... than usual this week ! This microwave has a 25% (2)..... . It usually costs 1.000 LE, but now it is 750 LE. Osama's family want to buy a (3)..... TV, so that they can watch films on the (4)..... .

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Either) Sama nor Toka speaks German.
2. ..... (Neither) Tarek and Abdallah are absent.
3. The three T-shirts are good, but I need the ..... (big) one.
4. This red bag is ..... (many) expensive than the blue one.

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 16 : 18 WB pages 81 & 82

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

log (ged) in (v)	يسجل دخول	turn (ed) off (v)	يطفئ - يوقف
fill (ed) in (v)	يملأ استمارة - يعطى معلومات	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (بالكهرباء)
plug (ged) in (v)	يتصل بالكهرباء	password (n)	كلمة السر
turn (ed) on (v)	يشغل	handicraft (n)	حرفة يدوية - عمل يدوى
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	artists (n)	فنانين

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

assistant (n)	مساعد	passport (n)	جواز سفر
email (ed) (v)	يرسل بالبريد الالكترونى	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع
again (adv)	مرة أخرى - ثانية	corner (n)	ركن - زاوية
drop (ped) (v)	يسقط - يرمى	battery (n)	بطارية
form (n)	استمارة - نموذج	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
town centre (n)	وسط المدينة	rule (n)	قاعدة

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

statue (n)	تمثال	south (n)	جنوب
wooden (adj)	خشبى	style (n)	أسلوب - طريقة - طراز
carpet (n)	سجادة	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
quality (n)	جودة	decorated (adj)	مزين - مزخرف
village (n)	قرية	designs (n)	رسومات - نقوشات
shells (n)	صدف - قواقع	soft (adj)	ناعم / لين
coast (n)	ساحل	colourful (adj)	ملون
Arabic (n), (adj)	اللغة العربية - عربى (الجنسية)	instructions (n)	تعليمات

Materials مواد خام

wood	خشب	stone	حجر
leather	جلد مدبوغ	metal	معدن
wool	صوف	plastic	بلاستيك
glass	زجاج		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
send	يرسل	sent	sent
lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
meet	يقابل	met	met
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	earn	money	يجنى نقود
lose	homework	يفقد الواجب	have	a problem	لديه مشكلة
follow	a rule	يتبع قاعدة	get	information	يحصل على معلومات

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 16

Hello. How can I help you, Aya ?

Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly(1) turned off(2). Now, I can't log in(3) and I think I lost my work !

Check Vocabulary

(1) فجأة | (2) اغلق | (3) يسجل دخول

Was the computer plugged in[4] ?

Yes, it was plugged in. I was charging[5] the battery[6].

Did you turn on[7] the computer again ?

Yes, but then it said my password[8] to log in was wrong.

One moment please, ... I just emailed[9] you a form[10] to fill in[11] to get a new password. Log in again with that information[12]. I hope that works[13] !

OK, thank you.

Check Vocabulary

(4) متصل بالكهرباء	(5) يشحن	(6) بطارية	(7) يشغل جهاز	(8) كلمة السر
(9) يرسل بالبريد الالكتروني	(10) استمارة	(11) يملأ / يسجل معلومات	(12) معلومات	(13) اتمنى أن تنجح

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Egyptian Handicrafts[1]

The best quality[2] and prices !

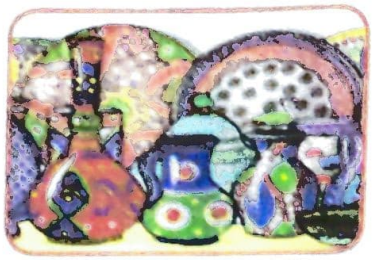
These beautiful wooden[3] boxes can be used for jewellery[4]. They are decorated[5] with shells in traditional designs[6]. They are made by artists[7] near the coast.

The leather industry[8] is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best quality. The leather is very soft[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) حرف يدوية	(2) جودة	(3) خشبي	(4) مجوهرات	(5) مزين
(6) نقوشات / رسومات تقليدية	(7) فنانين	(8) صناعة الجلود	(9) ناعم الملمس	

We sell many different types of pots [10] in different colours for your home. The artists paint [11] the pots with traditional Arabic designs.



Egypt has a long history of making beautiful carpets. These colourful, modern carpets will look amazing in any home.

Call or email us to find out about special offers [12].

Check Vocabulary

(10) أوانى | (11) يطلى - يرسم | (12) عروض مميزة

• on Lesson 3 WB page 81

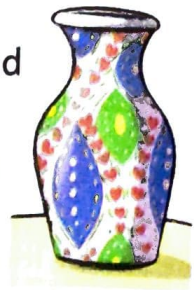
Congratulation [1] on buying a new computer ! Here are the instructions [2] for how to use it :

1. First, plug in [3] the computer. To charge [4] the battery, leave it for three or four hours.
2. Now, turn on the computer.
3. When the computer is ready [5], it will ask you to fill in some information.
4. Write your name and choose a password [6] that nobody can guess.
5. Now, you can log in [7] to your computer and start using it.
6. Don't forget to turn off your computer when you are not using it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تهانينا | (2) تعليمات | (3) قم بتوصيل الجهاز بالكهرباء | (4) يشحن | (5) جاهز | (6) كلمة السر | (7) يسجل دخول

• on Lesson 4 WB page 82



The south [1] of Egypt is famous for [2] its beautiful handicrafts [3]. People who live here sell carpets [4], baskets and colourful [5] pots. Some women in a village [6] near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves [7] of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood [8] and leather [9]. These handicrafts are very popular [10] with tourists, and help the Egyptians to earn money [11].

Check Vocabulary

(1) جنوب	(2) مشهور بـ	(3) حرف/أعمال يدوية	(4) سجاد	(5) ملون	(6) قرية
(7) أوراق شجر	(8) خشب	(9) جلد (مصنع)	(10) محبوب	(11) يجني المال	

Videoscript

Ceramics [1] is the word we use to describe pots, vases [2], bowls [3] and tiles [4] that are made from clay [5]. Clay is a type of mud [6] which you can use to make ceramics. This man is using clay to make a vase. We can then paint the ceramics to make them both more colourful and more beautiful.

The Ancient Egyptians made some of the earliest ceramics in the world. They used clay from both the River Nile in the south of Egypt and from the city of Qena [7].

The Ancient Egyptians used both kinds of clay to make some ceramics that you can still see today.

This vase is almost four thousand years old. It was made from Qena clay. Qena clay makes pots are whiter than those made from Nile clay.

This vase is even older. It is almost five thousand years old and it was made from clay from the Nile. Neither vase is painted. People probably used both of these vases to carry water.

This plate [8] is from the nineteenth century [9]. This plate is even older. It is from the eleventh century. Both plates are from Egypt and they are both painted beautifully.

Egyptian ceramics are very beautiful. Do you have any at home ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) الأوانى الفخارية أو الخزفية	(2) مزهريات	(3) أوعية عميقة (سلطانية)	(4) بلاط	(5) صلصال
(6) طمى / طين	(7) مدينة قنا	(8) طبق	(9) القرن التاسع عشر	

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 (be) one of the + اسم جمع + صفة تفضيل ...

ex.: - Aya is one of the tallest girls in school.

2 fill in – fill with

* **fill in** يملئ (بيانات - استمارة)

ex.: - Fill in this form, please. We want to know information about you.

* **fill ... with ...** يملأ ... بـ

ex.: - Toka filled the bottle with cold water.

3 win / gain / earn

* **win (won – won)** يفوز بـ (جائزة - مباراة - مسابقة ...)

ex.: - Hoda won a gold medal in judo.

* **gain (ed)** يكسب / يكتسب (معلومات - وزن - خبرة ...)

ex.: - He is wise. He gained much experience in life.

* **earn (ed)** يكسب (مال - معيشة ...)

ex.: - Mr Mohab has earned a lot of money in Saudi Arabia.

4 (be) used to / (be) used for

* **(be) used to + (inf.)** يستخدم فى

ex.: - A microwave is used to heat cold food.

* **(be) used for (inf. + ing)** يستخدم فى

ex.: - A microwave is used for heating cold food.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk to	يتحدث إلى (شخص)	walk along ...	يمشى بامتداد ....
talk about	يتحدث عن (شىء)	run around a corner	يجرى حول الناصية (الزاوية)
get a new password	يحصل على كلمة سر جديدة	take ... to prison	يسجن (شخص)
send a form	يرسل نموذج أو استمارة	(be) made by	مصنوع بواسطة ....
a really cool new phone	هاتف جديد رائع حقًا	come in many colours	يأتى بعدة ألوان
walk down the road	يمشى على الطريق	in traditional designs	به رسومات تقليدية
feel very bad	يشعر بالسوء الشديد	in different colours	بالوان مختلفة

make beautiful handicrafts يقوم بأعمال يدوية جميلة	sell in many shops يبيع فى محلات مختلفة
(be) interested in (n./ inf. + ing) مهتم بـ	(be) famous for مشهور بـ
	popular with مشهور لدى / محبوب بـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Some websites ask you to ..... in using your email.
   a. log b. plug c. turn d. make
2. The battery is empty. I need to ..... it.
   a. choose b. charge c. run into d. make
3. Don't forget to ..... your computer when you aren't using it.
   a. turn on b. turn out c. turn into d. turn off
4. Aswan is famous for Egyptian ..... from leaves.
   a. bowls b. handicrafts c. statues d. batteries

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB I just emailed you a form to ..... in to get a new password.
   a. fill b. log c. check d. sell
6. SB I lost some homework when my computer ..... !
   a. put b. broke c. charged d. ran
7. WB The TV is not working. Is it ..... in ?
   a. plugged b. passed c. logged d. charged
8. WB You can't use this computer without the ..... . I think it's 123 hello!
   a. address b. name c. password d. passport

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. These beautiful handicrafts help them ..... money.
   a. do b. earn c. lose d. have
10. Can you ..... the meaning of the word ?
    a. guess b. park c. address d. put
11. The expensive belts are made of ..... .
    a. cotton b. leather c. stone d. metal
12. This vase is ..... with shells.
    a. had b. done c. found d. decorated

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. This icon is used for ..... the website.
a. enter b. entered c. enters d. entering

14. Giza is famous ..... the Pyramids and the Sphinx.
a. of b. for c. at d. in

15. Sally is interested ..... traditional art.
a. in b. of c. for d. about

16. These shirts are sold ..... different sizes and colours.
a. about b. off c. in d. with

17. It's fantastic to walk ..... the Nile.
a. along b. round c. around d. ahead

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonyms المرادف	Antonym المضاد
start يبدأ	begin	finish ينهى - ينتهى
turn on يشغل	switch on	turn off – shut down يغلق / يطفئ
remember يتذكر	recognise - recall	forget ينسى
true صحيح	right - correct	false - wrong خاطئ
log in يسجل دخول (للنظام الكترونى)	start using the system / sign in	log out - sign out يسجل خروج (من نظام الكترونى)
colourful ملون	bright	plain سادة

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- en	تحول إسم إلى صفة	wood**en** خشبى
- ful	تحول إسم إلى صفة	colour**ful** ملون
- er	تحول فعل الى إسم فاعل	robb**er** لص
- al	تحول إسم إلى صفة	tradition**al** تقليدى

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "wrong" is " ..... ".
   a. turned b. low c. high d. right
2. "Plain" is the opposite of ..... .
   a. modern b. ugly c. colourful d. beautiful
3. The word "wood" can be an adjective by adding ..... .
   a. –ure b. – ion c. – en d. – in
4. The word "traditional" is formed from the word " ..... ".
   a. trade b. true c. tradition d. try
5. The word "rob" can be turned into a noun by adding ..... .
   a. –er b. –ir c. –ist d. – est

III Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 **Affirmative Statements**
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

a) Regular verbs : أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

b) Irregular verbs : ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضى	الفعل	الماضى
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالآتى :

I / He / She / It ← فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't

We / They / You ← فاعل جمع → were / weren't

ex. - It was very exciting.

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Formation التكوين

1) Affirmative statements : ١) الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

I – He – She – It (فاعل مفرد) → was
We – You – They (فاعل جمع) → were
+ inf. (المصدر) + ing

ex. - I was eating my dinner.
- They were studying maths.

2) Negative statements : ٢) الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

I – He – She – It / (فاعل مفرد)
We – You – They (فاعل جمع)
+ was / were + not + inf. (المصدر) + ing

ex. - I was not eating my dinner.
- They were not studying maths.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

was not ⟶ wasn't were not ⟶ weren't

3) Interrogative : ٣) صيغة الاستفهام :

- **Yes / No question :** * السؤال بـ (هل) :

Was / Were	+	subject الفاعل	+	inf. المصدر	+	ing	..... ?

ex. - Was she holding a camera?

- Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.
- Were they watching TV?
- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

*** Wh - question :** * السؤال بإستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	+	was / were	+	subject الفاعل	+	inf. المصدر	+	ing	..... ?

ex. - What were you doing at 5 o'clock yesterday ?
- I was doing my homework.

ex. - What was she doing yesterday evening ?
- She was brushing her teeth.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

ex. - I was watching TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

- كما يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر أيضًا للتعبير عن فعل كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر قصير فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex. - While I was doing my homework, the telephone rang.

لاحظ الآتى :

While/As/Just as بينما/أثناء Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر , Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. - While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.

Past Simple Tense ← زمن الماضى البسيط | while/as/just as | Past Continuous Tense → زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. - We saw a robber while we were walking along the road.

When عندما | Past Simple Tense → زمن الماضى البسيط , | Past Continuous Tense → زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. When I saw Ahmed, he was playing football.

Past Continuous Tense ← زمن الماضى المستمر | when | Past Simple Tense → زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. Ali was reading a book when the light went out.

Add to your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

١. لاحظ إذا لم يتبع (While) فاعل فيكون الفعل بعدها كالتالى :

While + (inf. + ing) , Past Simple Tense → زمن الماضى البسيط

- While running, Reham fell down.

٢. يمكن أن تستبدل لـ (While) بـ (During) بمعنى (أثناء) ويتبعها عبارة أسمية.

- While I was playing a computer game, I fell down.
= During a computer game, I fell down.

٣. لاحظ عند وصف حدثين كانا يحدثان فى نفس الوقت دون أن يقطع أحدهما الأخر تستخدم الترتيب التالى :

While / As / Just as | Past Continuous Tense → زمن الماضى المستمر , | Past Continuous Tense → زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. While Salma was eating , Mona was watching TV.

٤. عندما يكون هناك حدثين وقع احدهما تلو الآخر بدون فاصل زمنى نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط :

When → ماضى بسيط → ماضى بسيط

ex. I lost some homework when my computer broke !

٥. يمكن أن نستخدم When قبل زمن الماضى المستمر لتعبر عن زمن كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر.

ex. When I was doing my homework, the lamp suddenly turned off.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. While Hany ..... his car, he crashed into a tree.
   a. drove b. drives c. was driving d. is driving
2. This morning, I ..... to the town centre with my dad.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. was going
3. I ..... the glass while I was leaving the kitchen.
   a. drops b. dropping c. drop d. dropped

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	الجملة تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعة حدث آخر و (While) يتبعها زمن الماضى المستمر.
2	b	الجملة تعبر عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى لذا الاختيار يكون ماضى بسيط.
3	d	يسبق (while) جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط والجملة تعبر عن حدث قطع آخر فى الماضى لذا الاختيار يكون ماضى بسيط.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB We ..... the bus to the shopping centre and I bought a really cool new phone !
   a. take b. took c. takes d. taking
2. SB As I ..... my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.
   a. gave b. giving c. was giving d. give
3. SB The phone ..... ! My friend felt very sad.
   a. breaks b. broken c. broke d. was breaking

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. As Omar was running, his father ..... him.
   a. stop b. stopping c. stops d. stopped
5. Yesterday, I ..... some of my friends at school.
   a. met b. meet c. was meeting d. will meet
6. I listened to music while we ..... to the sports centre.
   a. walked b. were walking c. will walk d. walk
7. There ..... an exciting match on TV yesterday.
   a. were b. was c. does d. did
8. I ..... very sad when my friend Ali was taken to hospital.
   a. am b. be c. was d. were
9. ..... I was reading a story, the light went off.
   a. While b. But c. Before d. After
10. While ..... down the street, I met him.
    a. walk b. walked c. walking d. was walking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB My friend felt very bad and I ..... (be) sad as well.
2. SB I ..... (show) my friends my new phone while we were walking down the road.
3. SB This morning, I ..... (go) to the town centre with my mum.
4. SB ..... (Be) the computer plugged in ? - Yes, it was.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Fady ..... (be) making tea when Ayman called him.
6. What ..... (be) you doing when Hassan came home ?
7. While I was charging my phone, my father ..... (come) into my room.
8. Israa ..... (lose) her keys while she was running.
9. Safaa ..... (feeling) sad when Hala was ill.
10. Salma slept while she ..... (listened) to music.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٩٦ و ٩٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- The Egyptian handicrafts.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. How were the wooden boxes decorated ?

.....

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

3. What do you think of the Egyptian handicrafts ?

.....

مهارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences هل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

"Handicrafts in the south of Egypt" الحرف اليدوية فى جنوب مصر

1. The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts.
يشتهر جنوب الصعيد فى مصر بالحرف اليدوية الجميلة.

2. You can buy beautiful carpets, baskets and colourful pots.
يمكنك شراء سجاد جميل وسلات وأوانى ملونة.

3. Women, there, are so clever. النساء هناك ماهرات جدا.

4. Tourists like these handicrafts. يحب السياح تلك المشغولات اليدوية.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

leather - password - was - Plug - Log

1. ..... in the computer to charge the battery.
2. People make handicrafts from wood and ..... .
3. Hassan can't remember his ..... .
4. As I ..... having lunch, the telephone rang.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a formal Email

كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية :

(Master Your Term) للمزيد من الشرح (مصطلحات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع الى مصطلح

"Model formal email" نموذج لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي

Imagine that you work for a shop in another country. You want to buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts to sell. Send a formal email to Mr Ashraf, the manager of big handicraft business in Cairo. Mr Ashraf's email address is ashraf@elmoasser.com. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy@freebusiness.com.

From : magdy@freebusiness.com ➡ "From" Line المرسل

To : ashraf@elmoasser.com ➡ "To" line

Subject : Asking about some Egyptian handicrafts ➡ "Subject" Line موضوع الرسالة

Dear Mr Ashraf, ➡ Greeting التحية

I am interested in buying some of your handicrafts to sell in my private shop in London. Can you send me a list of your handicraft products and their prices ? I would like to know how long the delivery will take and how much will it cost. Do you have special offers ? Also, I want to have an idea about the sizes and colours of your products. ➡ Body الموضوع

Yours faithfully,
Magdy ➡ Closing الخاتمة

D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

- Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Manar to tell her about:

"Your favourite Egyptian handicrafts"

Your name is Safaa and your email address is safaaali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is manarnour@gmail.com.

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Describing a problem with technology : **وصف مشكلة مع التكنولوجيا :**

1. I bought a new mobile yesterday. ١. اشتريت هاتفًا جديدًا بالأمس.
2. The mobile fell off while I was running. ٢. لقد سقط الهاتف بينما كنت أجرى.
3. The screen was damaged and I was very sad. ٣. تحطمت الشاشة وكنت حزينًا جدًا.
4. I went to the shop to have another screen. ٤. ذهبت للمحل للحصول على شاشة أخرى.

Self Assessment Activity

قيم نفسك.

- ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- فى حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Walaa is phoning a sales assistant to buy a tablet online.

Walaa : Hello ! Can I ask about the tablets you are advertising إعلان ؟

sales assistant : Yes, of course. (1) ..... ?

Walaa : I want to know some information about them.
(2) ..... ?

sales assistant : The price ranges يتراوح from 5.000 to 25.000 pounds.

Walaa : How can I see them ?

sales assistant : (3) ..... .

Walaa : OK. I have received your post. How much is the second tablet ?

sales assistant : (4) ..... .

Walaa : That's good ! I'll buy it. How can I get it ?

sales assistant : (5) ..... . Give me your name and address, please.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB Now my phone is not working ! I need to ..... the battery.
   a. charge b. turn c. do d. make
2. My uncle built a new factory to ..... carpets.
   a. make b. give c. do d. buy
3. Many computers ask you to ..... in before you can use them.
   a. put b. log c. enter d. turn
4. Can you carry that ..... box ? It's very heavy.
   a. woolen b. wool c. wooden d. wood
5. WB When you want to use a machine, first you need to turn it ..... .
   a. off b. in c. out d. on

6. We bought a carpet made of
   a. wool b. wood c. gold d. leather
7. This bag is made of
   a. wood b. stone c. glass d. leather
8. While to my favourite singer, my mom was cooking me a delicious pie.
   a. listen b. listens c. to listen d. listening
9. While I lunch, the bell rang.
   a. eating b. eats c. ate d. was eating
10. What at seven o'clock last night ?
   a. has Sama done b. is Sama doing
   c. does Sama do d. was Sama doing

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. When I went home last night, it ..... (rain) heavily.
2. What were you ..... (do) ?
3. As the robber ..... (run) with the lady's bag, some police officers stopped him.
4. WB Last Tuesday, I ..... (go) shopping with my friend.

4 **WB Complete the text with words from the list :**

leaves – village – on – carpets – handicrafts

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful (1) ..... . People who live here sell (2) ..... , baskets and colourful pots. Some women in a (3) ..... near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the (4) ..... of trees. When I was in Aswan, I bought a lot of pots for all members of my family.

5 **Choose the correct word :**

1 . WB You can't use this computer without the **password / passport**.

2 . SB As I **give / was giving** my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.

6 **Write an email of about(110) words to your friend John who lives in Spain about tourist attractions in Egypt :** مرجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your name is Seif and your email address is seifsalah@almoasser.com.
Your friend's email address is john17@gmail.com.

LESSONS

5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

order (ed) (v), (n)	يطلب - طلب تجارى
complaint (n)	شكوى
machine (n)	ماكينة
email (ed) (v), (n)	يرسل بالبريد الإلكترونى - رسالة بريد الكترونى
horrible (adj)	مريع - شنيع
review (n)	مقال نقدى - مراجعة
jewellery box (n)	صندوق مجوهرات (حُلى)
call (ed) back (v)	يعاود الإتصال
online shopping (n)	التسوق عبر الانترنت

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

delivery company (n)	شركة التوصيل
role - play (ed) (v)	تبادل الأدوار
customer (n)	زبون / عميل
product (n)	مُنتج
shop (ped) (v) , (n)	يتسوق - محل
seller (n)	بائع
electronically (adv)	الكترونيًا
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
size (n)	حجم - مقاس
trusted (adj)	موثوق به
sources (n)	مصادر
user (n)	مستخدم

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

agree (d) (v)	يوافق
quick (adj)	سريع
cross (n) , (adj)	علامة (×) - غاضب
carpet (n)	سجادة
Alexandria Electrics	شركة الاسكندرية للصناعات الكهربائية
title (n)	عنوان (مقال - كتاب ...)
mix (ed) up (v)	يخلط
describe (d) (v)	يصف
points (n)	نقاط
pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
text (n)	نص

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
keep	يحفظ - يظل	kept	kept
say	يقول	said	said

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

complaint	something you make when you are unhappy about something	شكوى
order	when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make something for them	طلب تجارى
call back	return a phone call	يعاود الاتصال
email	to send a message electronically	يرسل رسالة بالبريد الإلكترونى

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	a complaint	يقدم شكوي	**get**	angry	يغضب
answer	a complaint	يرد على شكوى	**keep**	calm	يظل هادئ

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• **on Lesson 5 SB page 19**

Hisham : Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts[1]. How can I help you ?
Ali : Hello, I want to make a complaint[2].
Hisham : Oh, dear. What's the problem ?
Ali : I ordered[3] some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your website[4] says the delivery[5] takes five days, but I'm still waiting !

Check Vocabulary

(1) أعمال يدوية | (2) شكوى | (3) قدم طلب | (4) موقع إلكترونى | (5) خدمة التوصيل

Hisham : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number, please ?

Ali : Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8. I emailed[6] you last week.

Hisham : Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery to Kenya, is that right ?

Ali : That's correct.

Hisham : Hmm, yes the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call you back[7]. Can I take your phone number please ?

Ali : Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please ?

Hisham : Of course.

Ali : Thank you. Goodbye.

Check Vocabulary

(6) أرسل رسالة بريد الكترونى (7) سأعاود الاتصال بك

on Lesson 5 WB page 83

Mrs Nahla : Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.

Assistant : Oh, dear. What's the problem ?

Mrs Nahla : I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave !

Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name, please ?

Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

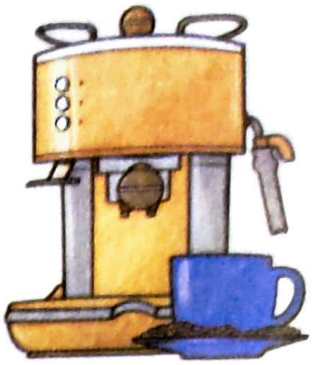
Assistant : Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery company and ask them to send you the correct item.

Mrs Nahla : Can they take the microwave when they come ?

Assistant : Yes, of course.

Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 20



*****Great Machine[1] !

I bought this as a present[2] for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use[3]. It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery[4] was quick, too !

*** Don't buy this machine !**

First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the machine arrived it was broken !

It looked good but it was very noisy[5] and the coffee was cold and horrible[6]. I sent it back[7] and I will buy a different one.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ماكينة | (2) هدية | (3) سهلة الاستخدام | (4) خدمة التوصيل | (5) صاخب | (6) مريع - شنيع | (7) يعيدها

• on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Review 1 :

I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However, when they used it, the food did not cook very well. It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.

Review 2 :

I bought this speaker as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one problem with it : her parents think it is too loud !

• on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Yesterday, I went to the market and I bought some new things for my bedroom. While I was shopping, I saw my friend Lara. She helped me to choose a new carpet Today, my dad painted my bedroom. Now it was blue. It looked really good !

• on Lesson 7 WB page 85

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to charge the battery. To do this, he plugged in the phone and turned it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to fill in some information about himself. The phone asked for a password. Now, he can log in and use his phone. It's very nice !

• on Lesson 7 WB page 85

Huda : Look at these two wooden boxes. Do you like either of them, Lama ?
Lama : Yes, I like both of them, but they are expensive.
Huda : What about these pots ? I like the red one and the blue one.
Lama : Sorry, I like neither the red one nor the blue one, but the yellow one is nice.
Huda : We should choose something that we both like. I think we should either buy the leather bag or the carpet.
Lama : OK, let's buy the leather bag. The carpet is a bit big !

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 order يأمر - يطلب

* order (ed) (v)
ex.: - She ordered him to clean his room.
- I ordered a coffee machine but I got the wrong item.
طلب - أمر (تعليمات صادرة من مستوى أعلى)

* order (n)
ex.: - The officer gave orders to the soldiers to move on.
- I called the delivery company because the order was late.

* **in order** في الترتيب

ex.: The teacher asked his students to put the words in order.

2 complain - complaint

* **complain (ed) (v) (about - against)** يشكو

ex.: Hani complained about not having enough pocket money.

* **complaint (n)** شكوى

ex.: Hani made a complaint about not having enough pocket money.

3 get = become يصبح (عندما يتبع الفعل get صفة)

ex.: Roaa got angry when her father didn't buy her a new mobile.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

order an item	يطلب سلعة	work for	يعمل لصالح / لدى
I'm still waiting	لازلت منتظرًا	sorry about	آسف بشأن
call back	يعيد الإتصال	think about	يفكر فى
try not to get angry	يحاول ألا يغضب	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن
explain the problem	يشرح المشكلة	Oh, dear !	ياه / ياسلام (تستخدم للتعبير عن الانزعاج أو الدهشة)
wait for	ينتظر	It doesn't work.	إنها لا تعمل
ask for	يطلب	agree with	يتفق مع
as a present for	كهدية لـ		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The customer made a / an ..... after receiving a wrong item.
   a. text b. complaint c. interview d. topic
2. You can ..... food online on some apps.
   a. cook b. order c. keep d. bake
3. The mixer خلاط is a ..... for mixing foods.
   a. kitchen b. pocket c. toy d. machine

4. City life has pros and .
   a. coins b. cons c. oils d. onions

5. My grandma keeps her gold in a beautiful box.
   a. jewellery b. match c. recycle d. tools

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB Online shopping can be done anytime, but you need to be careful where you ..... from !
   a. shop b. ask c. complain d. answer

7. WB To ..... back is to return a phone call.
   a. call b. cool c. carry d. complain

8. WB To ..... is to send a message electronically.
   a. address b. write c. email d. order

9. WB The toaster was ..... . I sent it back and will buy a different one.
   a. fine b. quick c. horrible d. amazing

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. Try to ..... your bag to help you look for it.
    a. describe b. include c. find d. make

11. You should buy items from ..... sources.
    a. horrible b. terrible c. trusted d. wrong

12. Read the text and give it a suitable ..... .
    a. item b. role c. title d. order

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Try not to ..... angry when you hear the news.
    a. get b. make c. find d. do

14. These sentences are ..... up and the teacher wants us to put them in order.
    a. delivered b. mixed c. turned d. given

15. She is unhappy ..... the order as it arrived very late.
    a. on b. about c. back d. in

16. What are you thinking ..... , Leen ?
    a. about b. for c. with d. from

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
happy	سعيد	glad	unhappy	حزين
seller	بائع	shop assistant	customer	زبون - عميل
positive	إيجابي	good - helpful - practical	negative	سلبي
beautiful	جميل	nice - pretty	horrible	مريع / شنيع

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unhappy	حزين
- ed	تكون صفة من فعل	trusted	موثوق به
- t	تكون إسم من فعل	complaint	شكوى
- er	تكون اسم فاعل من فعل	user	مستخدم
		seller	بائع
- y	تكون صفة من اسم	noisy	صاخب

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Negative" is the opposite of ..... .
   a. positive b. boring c. complex d. pleased
2. I bought this toaster and it was "beautiful". "Beautiful" can be replaced by the word very ..... .
   a. glad b. easy c. horrible d. nice
3. The words "seller" and "customer" are ..... .
   a. the same b. synonyms c. equals d. opposites
4. Yon can make a noun from the verb "sell" by adding ..... .
   a. - al b. - er c. - y d. - tion
5. The word "complaint" is a/an ..... .
   a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb
6. You can make an adjective from the noun "noise" by adding ..... .
   a. - ly b. - y c. - er d. - ful

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 7 WB page 85 من كتاب الطالب صفحة ١١٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

1. What does the pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   - It refers to Karim's phone.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What should Karim do to charge the battery?
   - .....

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

3. Why do you think Karim is very excited ?
   - .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

"The coffee machine" آلة صنع القهوة

1. The coffee machine is my favourite item. ١. آلة صنع القهوة هى جهازى المفضل.
2. I bought one as a present for my father. ٢. اشتريت واحدة كهدية لوالدى.
3. It makes a really delicious cup of coffee. ٣. تقوم بصنع فنجان قهوة لذيذ فعلا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

complaint - either - toaster - Positive - Negative

1. ..... people think only about the bad things.
2. I bought this ..... as a present for my mother.
3. You can buy ..... the carpet or the chair.
4. You can make a ..... when you are unhappy about something.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

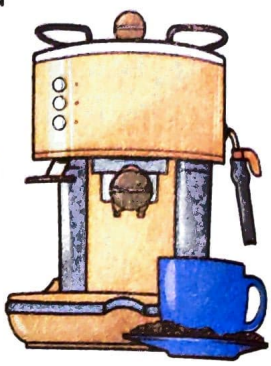
C. Writing a product Review

كتابة نموذج لتقييم مُنتج

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Write a product review about a coffee machine advertised online.

This is a new type of coffee machines. It is produced by a good producer. It is made of good materials. It is safe and easy to use. It is available in two colours : red or black. However, the machine is expensive compared to other machines. It also uses much more electricity than similar products. If you don't mind paying more for the product and the electricity it will use, then you can buy this high-quality coffee machine.



D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة نموذج تقييم لمنتج

- Write a product review of about 110 words on :

"A microwave you bought online"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Discussing a complaint :

مناقشة شكوى :

Customer	Assistant
1. I want to make a complaint. - أود أن أقدم شكوى.	- What's the problem ? - ما المشكلة ؟
2. I ordered a phone two days ago from your website, but I received a different one. - طلبت هاتفًا من موقعكم منذ يومين، لكن استلمت جهازًا مختلفًا.	- I'm very sorry about that. I'll give orders to the delivery to change it in 5 hours. - أنا أعتذر جدًا بشأن ذلك. سأعطى تعليماتى لخدمة التسليم أن يبدله خلال خمس ساعات.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek is making a complaint about a kettle that he has bought.

Tarek : Hello, can I speak to the manager, please ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. (1) ..... ?

Tarek : I have bought a kettle and I want to make a complaint.

Assistant : (2) ..... ?

Tarek : It doesn't work well.

Assistant : Did you read the instructions well ?

Tarek : (3) ..... .

Assistant : Why ?

Tarek : (4) ..... .

Assistant : Sorry, give me your details and I will send you one.

Tarek : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... shopping has positive and negative sides.
   a. Offline b. Online c. Logging d. Logged
2. I want to ..... a complaint about that device جهاز.
   a. make b. do c. get d. order
3. Rashwan is really good at ..... new lessons.
   a. explaining b. killing c. complaining d. shopping
4. Don't be late. I'll wait ..... you.
   a. of b. on c. for d. in
5. You should try to be more ..... about your study.
   a. negative b. positive c. terrible d. nervous

6. WB A/An ..... is something you make when you are unhappy about something.
   a. website b. audience c. evidence d. complaint
7. WB When a customer asks someone to send or make something for them means to ..... .
   a. deliver b. complain c. order d. offer
8. I don't want to buy the dress or the T-shirt. ..... of them are the right colour !
   a. Either b. Neither c. Both d. And
9. WB This shop is neither interesting ..... cheap. Let's go to a different one.
   a. or b. and c. but d. nor
10. WB ..... Alexandria and Port Said are on the Mediterranean Sea.
    a. Either b. Neither c. Too d. Both

3 SB Complete the text with these words :

say - be - calm - angry - do

If you need to make a complaint, try not to get angry ! Keep (1)....., explain the problem and (2)..... what you want the other person to (3)..... . Then they will usually (4)..... happy to help you.

4 SB Write a review of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Something you or your family bought online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد .

قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ..... فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ kettle
- ☐ toaster
- ☐ microwave
- ☐ necklace
- ☐ assistant
- ☐ password
- ☐ decorate
- ☐ complaint

2 Read and write sentences using both , either , neither and while.

اقرأ الجمل مستخدمًا روابط both, either, neither, while.

- ☐ Neither Ali nor Hassan played tennis.
- ☐ Both Heba and Shimaa visited Aswan.
- ☐ While I was playing football, I broke my arm.

3 Talk about buying things in a shop

أتحدث عن شراء أشياء فى محل

- ☐ How much is the toaster ?
- ☐ Is there a sale on some items ?
- ☐ What is the discount on kettles ?

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term
- جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر
- جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 2

Vocabulary

coffee machine	آلة صنع القهوة
kettle	غلاية كهربية
toaster	محمص خبز كهربى
microwave	فرن كهربى (مايكروويف)
special offer	عرض خاص
necklace	عقد
snack	وجبة خفيفة
assistant	معاون / مساعد
plug in	يوصل بالمقبس الكهربى
password	كلمة سر
decorate	يزين / يزخرف
quality	جودة
colourful	ملون
handicrafts	أعمال يدوية
delivery	خدمة توصيل
present	هدية
charge	يشحن
complaint	شكوى
positive	إيجابى

Language

1- both / either / neither / none

* Both بمعنى كلًا من تستخدم للربط بين شيئين
- Both Ali and Ahmed are clever.
* Either بمعنى إما أو للاختيار بين شيئين
- You can buy either the shirt or the trousers.
* Neither بمعنى "لا ولا" وتستخدم فى النفى
- I'll buy neither the tablet nor the laptop.

2- Using past simple and past cont. with [As - While]

As / While $\frac{\text{past}}{\text{cont.}}$, $\frac{\text{past}}{\text{simple}}$

* While Salma was reading a story, her mother called her.

Speaking

1- Talking about things in the home

الحديث عن أشياء فى المنزل :

A : What is the most expensive item at your home ?
B : The fridge is the most expensive one.

2- Buying things in a shop

شراء أشياء فى محل :

A : How much is the microwave ?
B : It is 3000 LE.
A : What is the discount on the laptops ?
B : 30 %.

3- Making a complaint

تقديم شكوى :

- **Assistant :** What's the problem ?
- **You :** My laptop suddenly turned off.
- **Assistant :** Was it plugged in ?
- **You :** Yes, it was plugged in.
- **Assistant :** *I sent you some steps to follow.*

SB page 21 WB page 85

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A paragraph / An email on

➲ **Shopping centres / Egyptian handicrafts / Online shopping / The best items of technology**

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- What should shopping centres do to encourage customers ?
- What is the most important and oldest industry in Egypt ?
- Which items are made by artists in Egypt ?
- How can we encourage the Egyptian handicrafts ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Media	Shopping	Arts
- magazines	- special offer	- decorate
- websites	- market	- designs
- emails	- sale	- traditional
- posters	- discount	- carpets
- adverts	- prices	- artists

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

* What is the ..... item in your house ?	* It's easy to ..... .
* Neither Heba ..... Ali visited the High Dam.	* While I ....., Ali called me.

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :**

"Online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج

unit 2

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

kettle	غلاية (كهربائية)	handicraft	عمل يدوى
magazine	مجلة	decorate	يزين
industry	صناعة	leather	جلد
special deal	صفقة / عرض خاص	traditional	تقليدى
discount	خصم	delivery	توصيل / تسليم
charge	يشحن	complaint	شكوى
password	كلمة السر	customer	زبون / عميل

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. The lion is more dangerous[1] than the dog.
2. The kettle is cheaper than[2] the computer.
3. Both[3] Ashraf and Ayman visited Alexandria.
4. Neither[4] Heba nor Marwa did the homework.
5. While[5] I was driving home, I saw and accident.

Check Language

(1) مقارنة بين اثنين في الصفات طويلة المقطع
(2) مقارنة بين اثنين في الصفات قصيرة المقطع
(3) رابط إضافة بمعنى كلًا من أيوجد بالجملة فاعلين
(4) رابط بمعنى لا ولا
(5) الرابط "while" التي يتبعها ماضي مستمر ثم ماضي بسيط

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Questions	Answers
1. What do you want to buy ?	- I want to buy a microwave.
2. What's your problem ?	- My computer turned off suddenly.
3. What is the most useful item in your house ?	- The fridge is the most important item.

General Exercises on unit 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Janet wants to make a complaint about the coffee machine she has bought.

Janet : I went to the mall yesterday and bought a coffee machine.
Leila : (1) ..... ?
Janet : Yes, it didn't work.
Leila : Did you plug it in ?
Janet : (2) ..... .
Leila : (3) ..... ?
Janet : It was on sale.
Leila : Did you buy it from a trusted shop ?
Janet : (4) ..... . Why ?
Leila : As some people generally sell things for less price and less quality.
Janet : So what must I do ?
Leila : (5) ..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Buying and selling is part of everyday activities. People used to do this long ago. But shopping habits changed a lot. In the past you could deal directly with a person. You could talk to the seller and even ask for advice about the best quality and price. When there was a problem, you could go to the shop and explain **it**. At that time you could solve any problem at once.

Buying and selling today depend a lot on online activities. First, you must log on the internet and choose price, the quality and time of delivery. You must provide correct and clear information to get your product. When there is a problem, you must fill in a form describing it clearly. An online assistant will contact you. But it may take a long time to get a reply. The biggest problem is that some companies can't be reached easily because they may be far away from you or you don't know the exact address. To buy online, you must be careful about your personal information. You must keep it secret and deal with trusted online companies.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Explain why there may be a problem when you buy something online ? Give two reasons.

.....

2. Are there any new shopping habits today ? Name two habit.

.....

3. How can you protect your personal information when you buy something online ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The best title for the passage is ..... .

a. shopping b. buying c. selling d. internet

5. Some companies can't be reached easily because ..... from you.

a. they are protected b. their products are expensive

c. they are far away d. they are usually closed

6. The underlined "**it**" refers to the ..... .

a. problem b. product c. correct price d. good quality

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Neither Mark ..... his brother is very tall.

a. and b. both c. nor d. or

2. I bought an electric ..... to make tea easily.

a. toaster b. coffee machine c. kettle d. tool

3. I made a/an ..... to buy a new laptop online.

a. order b. complaint c. present d. design

4. WB This microwave has a 25 % .....

a. discount b. speaker c. deal d. website

5. You must ..... the machine in before it works.

a. turn b. work c. prepare d. plug

6. You can cook fast if you use a ..... It takes a few minutes.
   a. kettle b. toaster c. fridge d. microwave
7. He bought a new ..... phone which helps him a lot in his work.
   a. fresh b. usual c. smart d. fast
8. WB To ..... is to send a message electronically.
   a. order b. email c. complain d. call
9. SB ..... Alexandria Electrics nor Sound and Vision sell clothes.
   a. Either b. Neither c. Too d. Both
10. When the phone rang, I ..... a film.
   a. watch b. watching c. was watching d. watched

4 Complete the sentences with these words :

charge – travel – nice – invited – sleep

Last Friday, I went to Alexandria. I (1) ..... my friends. Neither of them liked to go with me. We have (2) ..... things to do during the day. But, I had to choose either to (3) ..... by car or go by train. In the afternoon, my phone went off because I forgot to (4) ..... it before I went out.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I moved to a new house which is ..... (wide) than mine.
2. My brother got ..... (good)marks than I did.
3. As I ..... (sleep), the robber stole my wallet.
4. They ..... (either) run nor play. They just stay at home.

6 Choose the correct word :

1. WB My sister and I **either / both** like playing tennis.
2. I need to **charge / log** the battery of my phone.

7 WB Write a review of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The best and worst items of technology in your house"

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 2 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. You can cook things quickly	a. ( ) I need to charge the battery.
2. My phone is not working now!	b. ( ) to send a message electronically.
3. The south of Egypt is famous	c. ( ) with a microwave.
4. To "email" means	d. ( ) shop online.
5. Neither Sami nor Ali	e. ( ) for its beautiful handicrafts.
	f. ( ) with a kettle.

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You can choose **neither** rice or salad with your meal. (.....)
2. These beautiful **wood** boxes can be used for jewellery. (.....)
3. Yesterday, I **go** to the market. (.....)
4. **Either** the speakers and the microwave are on sale. (.....)
5. Hello ! I want to make a **complain**. (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

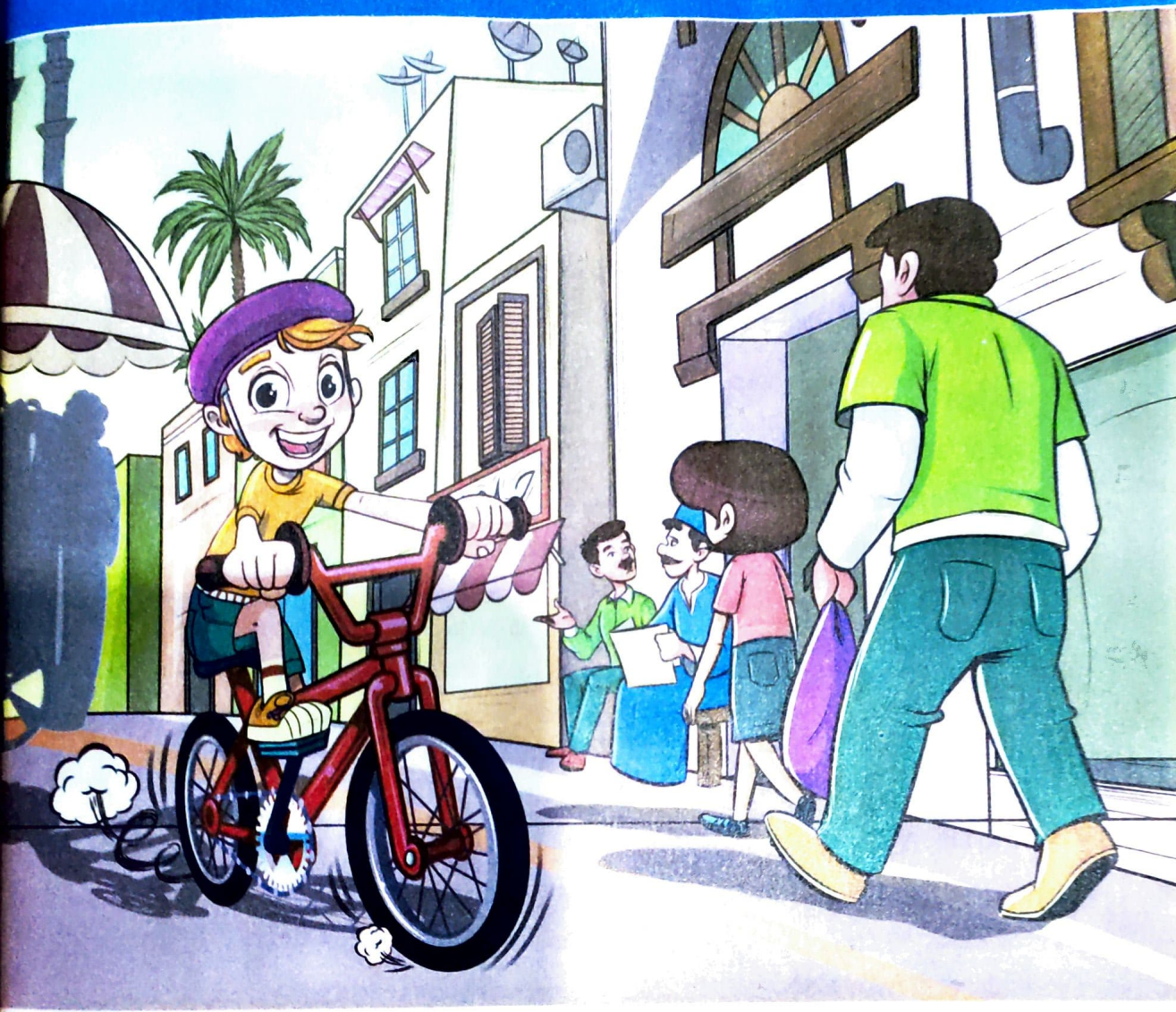
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This car is ..... sale. Her owner wants to sell it.
   a. on b. at c. of d. for
2. Soha fell asleep ..... the film.
   a. while b. on c. during d. when
3. A kettle is used ..... water.
   a. boil b. to boil c. boils d. boiling
4. Amr ..... much experience in his life. He is a hard-working man.
   a. won b. earned c. gained d. lost
5. Tamer works ..... a company that designs clothes.
   a. on b. for c. with d. to

UNIT 3

My community

SB pages 22:31 WB pages 86:92



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An article about a plan to help poor people; a community social network page; David Copperfield; an online message about a community project
- **Writing :**
  An article about how to help poor people; a social network massage about a community problem; a survey about your community
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other
- **Speaking :**
  Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings
- **Language :**
  Adjectives ending in - ing or -ed
- **Life Skills :**
  Participation : responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity

لاتقان الوحدة
- للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

LESSONS

1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 86 & 87

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

community (n)	مجتمع	heroes (n)	أبطال
headings (n)	عناوين رئيسية	aim to	يهدف إلى
survey (n)	دراسة إستطلاعية	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
leisure activities (n)	أنشطة ترفيهية	neighbourhood (n)	حى - مجاورة
sports activities (n)	أنشطة رياضية	community events (n)	الأحداث المجتمعية
local facilities (n)	مرافق محلية	disappointed (adj)	محبط - خائب الأمل
equal opportunities (n)	فرص متكافئة	initiative (n)	مبادرة
education (n)	التعليم	rural areas	مناطق ريفية

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

community projects	مشاريع مجتمعية	pavement (n)	رصيف شارع
local shops	أسواق محلية	young people (n)	الشباب
streetlight (n)	مصباح الشارع	driving (n)	القيادة
meeting (n)	اجتماع - لقاء	works of art (n)	أعمال فنية
elderly (adj)	متقدم فى السن	transport (n)	النقل (المواصلات)
disabled people (n)	الأشخاص ذوى الإعاقة / المعاقين	deliver (ed) (v)	يوصل - يسلم

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

health (n)	الصحة	surprise (d) (v) , (n)	يدهش - يفاجىء
decent life	حياة كريمة	object (n)	شىء
job opportunities	فرص عمل	effect (n)	تأثير
in addition (adv)	بالإضافة إلى	situation (n)	موقف

businesses (n)	مشاريع تجارية	expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع
solve (d) (v)	يحل (مشكلة مثلًا)	festival (n)	مهرجان - احتفال
plan (ned) (v) (n)	يخطط - خطة	washing machine (n)	غسالة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
put up	يشيد - يقيم	put up	put up
know	يعرف	knew	known

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

making a difference	having a good effect on a person, place or situation	يحدث تغيير
surprised	what you feel when you do not expect something strange or unusual	مندهش
encourage	to try to make people do something by giving support and advice	يُشَجِّع
neighbourhood	a small area of a town and the people who live there	حى - مجاورة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

have	a good effect on	له تأثير جيد على	**build**	new sports centre	يبنى مركز رياضى جديد
make	a difference	يحدث تغيير	**put up**	new streetlights	يركب / يثبت أضواء جديدة للشوارع
	sentences about	يكون جمل عن			
show	a problem	يعرض مشكلة	**plant**	flowers in	يزرع زهور فى
	new works of art	يعرض أعمال فنية جديدة	**stop**	people from	يمنع الناس من
send	lots of text messages	يرسل الكثير من الرسائل النصية	**play**	chess	يلعب شطرنج

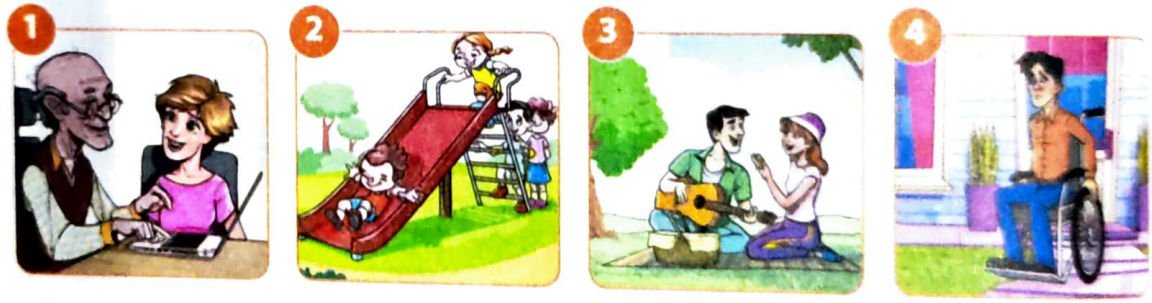
لاحظ أن حرف (gh) أحيانًا لا ينطق وأحيانًا ينطق فى بعض الكلمات /f/

Silent gh		Sounds like /f/	
daughter	ابنة	cough	يكح - سعال
neighbourhood	حى - جوار	laugh	يضحك
streetlight	مصباح الشارع	enough	كافٍ
right	صحيح	rough	قاس - خشن

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23



Fareed : I think the best thing about our community[1] is the facilities[2]. We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

Salah : Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community projects where we can volunteer to help people, especially the elderly.

Fareed : Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology.

Salah : We have really good leisure activities[3] here too - sports facilities and the children's playground, for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

Fareed : That's right, but I think we could improve[4] our equal opportunities. Our pavements, for example, are not accessible[5] for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجتمع (2) مرافق (3) أنشطة (4) يحسن (4) متاح / يمكن الوصول إليه

Salah : You're right. They're discussing[5] this problem at the next community meeting, actually.
Fareed : We should go.
Salah : Good idea!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يناقش

Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 86

I live in a great community. There are lots of sports activities[1] for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many local facilities[2] for people of all ages[3], including a great theatre and a history museum. Our roads have wide pavements[4], so it is not a problem for disabled people[5] to travel around. I help at one of the community projects[6], too. We help the elderly[7] to learn about the latest technology. My grandmother sends lots of text messages[8] now!

Check Vocabulary

(1) أنشطة رياضية	(2) مرافق محلية	(3) من كل الأعمار	(4) أرصفة عريضة
(5) الأشخاص ذوي الإعاقة	(6) مشروعات محلية	(7) كبار السن	(8) رسائل نصية

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

The Decent Life Initiative[1]

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference[2] to about 32 million people who live in rural areas[3] in Egypt. The initiative aims to[4] improve the quality[5] of public services[6]. It provides more health care[7], better education[8] and better job opportunities[9]. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver[10] medicine and help people who are ill.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مبادرة حياة كريمة	(2) يحدث فارقًا / اختلافًا	(3) مناطق ريفية	(4) تهدف إلى	(5) جودة
(6) خدمات عامة	(7) رعاية صحية	(8) تعليم	(9) فرص عمل	(10) يوصل - يسلم

It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition, young people will also be encouraged(11) to find out about the interesting new businesses(12) the Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work.

The Decent Life Initiative will continue to help people in poor neighbourhoods(13) around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people. That really is an amazing plan !

Check Vocabulary

(11) يشجع | (12) مشاريع تجارية | (13) أحياء مجاورة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 include / contain

* **include (d) (v)** — يتضمن - يشتمل على

ex.: - Don't include fat in your diet. It's unhealthy.

* **contain (ed) (v)** — يحتوى على

ex.: - This pot contains too much oil.

2 throw (threw - thrown)

* **throw away** — يرمى - يتخلص من

ex.: - She threw away all her old clothes.

* **throw into** — يرمى فى

ex.: - She threw her old doll into the rubbish bin.

3 everyone — كل شخص

ex.: - Everyone is going to the stadium. They want to support their team.

لاحظ : تعامل everyone معاملة المفرد، ولكن يعوض عنها بالضمير They فى الجملة الثانية.

4 between - amongst

* **between ... and ...** — بين (اثنين)

ex.: - Baher is standing between Ali and Tamer.

* **among (amongst)** — بين (أكثر من اثنين)

ex.: - I like living amongst my family and relatives.

5 because لأن (تعبر عن السبب)

* because + جملة كاملة

ex.: - SB I was really surprised because I found the questions difficult.

* because of + (n./inf. + ing) بسبب

ex.: - I cancelled the journey because of the bad weather.

- I didn't go to school because of being ill.

6 the police الشرطة

لاحظ أن : كلمة (police) تعامل دائمًا معاملة الجمع ويأتى قبلها (The)

ex.: - WB The police are stopping people from driving too fast.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out about	يكتشف عن	deliver ... to ...	يُسلم ... إلى ....
make ... safer	يجعله أكثر أمانًا	a group of	مجموعة من ...
start a project	يبدأ مشروع	encourage ... to ...	يشجع / يحث ... على ...
discuss a problem	يناقش مشكلة	expect something strange	يتوقع شيئًا غريبًا
live in	يعيش فى ...	improve the town's facilities	يطور / يُحسن مرافق المدينة
people of all ages	أشخاص من جميع الأعمار	hear about	يسمع عن
travel around	يتجول	have a better education by	يحصل على تعليم أفضل بواسطة
find work for	يجد عمل لـ	give work	يوفر فرص عمل لـ .....
decide to	يقرر أن		
give support and advice	يقدم الدعم والمشورة		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A/An ..... is a small area and the people who live in it.
   a. facility b. community c. opportunity d. survey
2. There are many local ..... for the elderly and disabled people in our country.
   a. differences b. problems c. facilities d. streetlights

3. Many young people do ..... activities such as swimming and other sports.
   a. scientific b. disabled c. abnormal d. leisure
4. When you try to make people do something by giving support and advice, you ..... them.
   a. encourage b. invent c. explore d. text

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB To ..... means to take a letter or package to a building.
   a. deliver b. encourage c. discuss d. feel
6. WB There are lots of ..... activities for young people, such as volleyball and tennis.
   a. hungry b. careful c. sports d. angry
7. WB The school is ..... up new lights in the playground.
   a. writing b. putting c. reading d. stopping
8. SB You feel ..... when you do not expect something strange or unusual.
   a. excited b. interested c. bored d. surprised
9. SB You can make a ..... when you have a good effect on a person, place or situation.
   a. reference b. difference c. heading d. reason

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. A ..... is an important event with lots of activities and beautiful shows.
    a. holiday b. spring c. festival d. school day
11. When he didn't pass the test, he felt ..... .
    a. proud b. excited c. interested d. disappointed
12. The President started the Decent Life ..... for poor people who live in villages.
    a. Effect b. Initiative c. Festival d. Machine

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Smoking has a bad effect ..... lungs.
    a. of b. at c. in d. on
14. The government tries to ..... work for young people.
    a. fail b. find c. pass d. make
15. Everyone is happy. ..... have won the match.
    a. He b. She c. They d. It

16. Ten children ..... two girls were killed in a car accident near Assiut.
a. containing b. including c. having d. doing

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
elderly	متقدم فى السن	old	young	صغير السن
safe	آمن	protected	dangerous	خطير
strange	غريب	abnormal	ordinary / normal	عادى - مألوف
near	قريب	close - nearby	far - remote	ناء / بعيد
wide	واسع - عريض	large - broad	narrow	ضيق
disappointed	محبط - خائب الأمل	upset	content	راض - قانع
deliver	يوصل - يسلم	carry / bring	take / receive	يأخذ / يستلم
leisure	ترفيه	relaxation	pressure / stress	ضغط / توتر

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
un –	تعطى عكس المعنى	unusual	غير عادى
dis –	تعطى عكس المعنى	disabled	من ذوى الإعاقة
– ly	تكون الظرف	recently	حديثًا / مؤخرًا
		loudly	بصوت عال
– ing	تكون الصفة	amazing	مدهش
– y	تكون الصفة	healthy	صحى

Exercises on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Near" and "close" are ..... .
a. synonyms b. antonyms c. different d. opposite

2. The antonym of "strange" is ..... .
a. normal b. abnormal c. unusual d. difficult

3. " ..... " has the same meaning of "upset".
   a. Content b. Disappointed c. Narrow d. Light
4. To give the opposite of the word "usual" we add the prefix .....
   a. ir- b. in- c. un- d. im-
5. The noun "health" can be an adjective by adding .....
   a. -ly b. -ed c. -ing d. -y

III Language

Remember تذكر

1 The Present Continuous Tense : زمن المضارع المستمر :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب / We / You / They / فاعل جمع + am / is / are + inf. المصدر + ing

ex. - We are learning English now.
- I am reading a story at the moment.
- Look ! He is playing tennis.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب / We / You / They / فاعل جمع + am / is / are + not + (inf. المصدر + ing)

ex. - She isn't listening to music now.

ملاحظات على : إضافة (ing) للفعل

- عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

write → writing

practise → practising

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك تضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

swim → swimming sit → sitting

- لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed → feeding wait → waiting

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

lie → lying die → dying

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

أ) السؤال بـ «هل» : A) Yes / No question :

Am	I		(inf. المصدر	
Is +	he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب	+	+	?
Are	we / you / they فاعل جمع		ing)	

ex. - Are they travelling to Luxor next week ?
- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام B) Wh question :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + (inf. المصدر + ing) ?

ex. - When are you having a party ?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن لتعبر عن حدث يقع أثناء الكلام :

now	الآن	Take care !	احذر !	at the moment	فى تلك اللحظة
Look !	انظر !	still	مازال	at present	فى الوقت الحاضر
Listen !	انصت !	tonight	فى هذه الليلة	Look out ! / Watch out !	احترس !

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.
- He is working now.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about finished future plans (at a specific time or place) and arrangements.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن خطط وترتيبات منتهية فى المستقبل (فى وقت أو مكان معين / محدد).

ex.: - We're starting a project next month.
- They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting.

ويمكن استخدام هذه التعبيرات للتعبير على ذلك :

arranged - made arrangements - prepared - made preparations :

ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

Advanced Notes ملاحظات للمستويات العليا من التفكير

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية مثل الحفلات وأعياد الميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My brother is getting married next Thursday.

- لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My class are going on a school trip next week.

- إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له وبالتالى نستخدم المضارع المستمر :

ex. - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

2 Adjectives ending in (- ing) or (- ed)

There are many adjectives that we have in English that end in (ing) or (ed)

(I) An adjective that ends in - (ing) is used to describe a noun.

ex.: - The film was boring.
- The new businesses are interesting.

ex.: - Wael is amazing. We are proud of him.

(II) An adjective that ends in (- ed) is used to describe a feeling.

ex.: - Villages are excited to hear about the plan. Young people will be interested in the new businesses.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The film was ..... I got bored , so I stopped watching it.
   a. bored b. bore c. boring d. boredom
2. She was ..... to hear that the museum was closed.
   a. disappoint b. disappointed c. disappointing d. disappoints
3. The school ..... up new lights in the playground next week.
   a. puts b. is putting c. going to put d. put
4. Samy ..... his birthday party next October.
   a. has b. had c. is having d. having

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	c — الصفة (boring) تصف الفيلم
2	b — الصفة (disappointed) تصف الشعور
3	b — الجملة تعبر عن أحداث بها ترتيب مسبق لذا نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر
4	c — الجملة تعبر عن أحداث بها ترتيب مسبق لذا نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The plan is ..... .
   a. exciting b. excited c. excite d. excites
2. WB The town ..... a new sports centre next year.
   a. build b. built c. is building d. builds
3. WB Volunteers ..... flowers in the park next month.
   a. plant b. are planting c. planted d. plants
4. WB Today's maths lesson was very ..... .
   a. interest b. interested c. interests d. interesting

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. I was very ..... when I came first.
   a. surprise b. surprising c. surprises d. surprised
6. This new city is ..... . There are many great buildings here.
   a. amaze b. amazement c. amazed d. amazing
7. Salma ..... dinner now. She can't help you with your homework.
   a. is cooking b. cooks c. was cooking d. has cooked
8. I was ..... , so I stopped watching that match.
   a. bore b. boring c. bored d. boredom
9. Hassan was ..... when he knew that the match was cancelled.
   a. disappoint b. disappointed
   c. disappointing d. disappointment

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB I was ..... (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.
2. SB Wael is ..... (interest). He lives on a boat.
3. SB That is a very ..... (interest) building, said the architect.
4. WB The children are very ..... (excite) because they have a new toy.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. My mother ..... (prepare) now for tomorrow's party.
6. I was ..... (amazing) when I saw the number of people in the stadium.

7. The trip to the High Dam was very ..... (excited).
8. Ayman booked a ticket. He ..... (travels) to Alexandria tomorrow.
9. It was ..... (bored) to watch the same film twice.
10. What ..... (they do) for the meeting next Sunday ?

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٣٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

1. How many people has the Decent Life Initiative made a difference to ?
   - **About 32 million people.**

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. Why do you think the Decent Life Initiative is important ?
   - .....

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the pronoun "**It**" in the last paragraph refer to ?
   - .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

"The Decent Life Initiative" مبادرة حياة كريمة

1. The Decent Life Initiative is really making a difference to about 32 million people in villages.
   ١. تحدث مبادرة حياة كريمة فارقًا حقيقيًا لحوالى ٣٢ مليون شخص يعيشون فى القرى.
2. Since 2019 the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water.
   ٢. منذ عام ٢٠١٩، لقد ساعدت مبادرة حياة كريمة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فى ٣٧٧ قرية ليحصلوا على مياه نظيفة.
3. It has helped to repair their houses. ٣. لقد ساعدت الأشخاص على إصلاح منازلهم.
4. It has also sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help ill people.
   ٤. لقد أرسلت أيضًا أطباء إلى القرى لتسليم الدواء ومساعدة المرضى.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

encourage - amazed - amazing - safer - pavements

1. I think we should make our streets ..... .
2. Posters are made to ..... people to throw away their rubbish.
3. The museum is ..... ! There are so many old things there.
4. Our roads have wide ..... .

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a short article

كتابة المقال القصير

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Model short article نموذج مقال قصير

Write a short article of 110 words for a website about how you could be a community hero.

"How you could be a community hero"

My name is Mohammed Ayman. I am 15 years old. There is a serious community problem which I want to solve. This problem is related to متعلقة بـ the school. A lot of students do not like the time they spend at school. In this short article, I'm going to discuss the reasons and the solutions of this problem.

Students do not like school because they feel bored and exhausted. They move from one subject to another. They are taught in traditional ways. They do not have the chance to develop their talents. They are only listeners. To solve this problem, we need to adopt new learning strategies. We must plan how to make learning useful and enjoyable at the same time. Students need to be positive and show their abilities through different activities. To conclude, learning at school must be interesting. All students must feel that they are part of the system, not only listeners.

D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقال قصير

- Write a short article for a website of about (110) words on :

"Sports facilities in your town"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

A community survey :

دراسة استطلاعية مجتمعية :

Questions	Answers
1. What things could people do to make a difference to poor people in your community ? - ما الأشياء التى يمكن للناس القيام بها لأحداث فارق للفقراء فى مجتمعك المحلى ؟	- People in the local community could do many things : they can donate food, clothing, old furniture... etc... - فى المجتمع المحلى يمكن أن يتبرع الناس باشياء عديدة مثل الطعام، الملبس، الأثاث القديم... وهكذا.
2. How could they do this ? - كيف يمكن أن يقوموا بذلك ؟	- They could start local charities to help people and make poster's to encourage them to do good things. - يمكن أن يقوموا بتأسيس جمعيات محلية لمساعدة الناس وإعداد ملصقات تشجع الناس للقيام بسلوكيات جيدة.

B. Discussion about community :

مناقشة عن المجتمع :

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think are the best things about your own community ? - فى (اعتقادك)، ما هى أفضل الأشياء فى مجتمعك ؟	- I like the sports facilities. Also I like our streets which are safer than before. - أحب المرافق الرياضية واحب ايضًا شوارعنا التى أكثر امانًا من ذى قبل.
2. Are there any facilities for the elderly and disabled people ? - هل هناك أى مرافق لكبار السن وذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (أصحاب الهمم) ؟	- Yes, there are many facilities made especially for them. - نعم. هناك الكثير من المرافق خاصة بهم.
3. Are people doing anything to improve the facilities ? What ? - هل يقوم الأشخاص بأى شىء لتحسين المرافق ؟ ماذا يقومون به ؟	- Yes. They keep them clean. - نعم. فهم يحافظون عليها نظيفة.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Magdi wants to join a charity and asks his friend, Hamdi about his opinion.

Magdi : Good evening, Hamdi. I want to ask you for advice. Are you free ?

Hamdi : (1) ..... . What do you want ?

Magdi : I want to do voluntary work. (2) ..... ?

Hamdi : You should join a charity.

Magdi : (3) ..... ?

Hamdi : You can go there and fill in a form to join them.

Magdi : Do you know any charity in our neighbourhood ?

Hamdi : (4) ..... .

Magdi : Can you come with me ?

Hamdi : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Good people often ..... a difference in their neighbourhood.
   a. make b. do c. encourage d. get
2. The initiative has helped more children to have a better ..... by building schools.
   a. health b. education
   c. situation d. neighbourhood
3. It's better to buy your needs from ..... shops to encourage them.
   a. local b. strange c. foreign d. remote
4. I ..... that he'll come early as usual.
   a. respect b. expect c. except d. accept
5. Young people help to ..... food to the poor in our community.
   a. put b. deliver c. diver d. plan
6. What fact might ..... you about the Decent Life Initiative ?
   a. expect b. solve c. plan d. surprise

7. WB I live in a great community. There are lots of sports ..... for young people there.
   a. theatres b. volunteers c. lines d. activities
8. They ..... their flat next weekend.
   a. were going to paint b. are painting
   c. were painting d. are painted
9. SB We ..... a project next week.
   a. are starting b. start
   c. started d. going to start
10. WB The walk over the mountains was beautiful but it was very ..... .
   a. tire b. tired c. tiring d. tires

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The players ..... (play) an important match next week.
2. Rania ..... (clean) her room tomorrow. It's arranged
3. I was really ..... (surprising) to know that you failed your exam.
4. It is a very ..... (excited) film. I'll watch it again.

4 Complete the sentences with these words :

strange - disabled - facilities - pavements - community

I live in a great (1) ..... . There are lots of sports activities for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many local (2) ..... for people of all ages, including a great theatre and a history museum. Our roads have wide (3) ..... , so it is nor a problem for (4) ..... people to travel around.

5 SB Write a short article for a website of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"What you can do to help people in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28 WB pages 88 & 89

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

lodger (n)	ساكن - نزيل	kindness (n)	حسن المعاملة - عطف / طيبة
bench (n)	مقعد (ثابت)	graffiti (n)	كتابة ورسوم على الجدران
greet (ed) (v)	يحيى - يرحب		

Forms of Communication

أشكال الاتصال / التواصل

meetings	اجتماعات	social network services	خدمات شبكة التواصل الاجتماعى
local newspaper	جريدة محلية	posters	الملصقات
community centre	مركز خدمة المجتمع	leaflets	منشورات - كتيبات
noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	local radio station	محطة الإذاعة المحلية

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

communicate (d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	business (n)	أعمال تجارية
matters (n)	شؤون - أمور - قضايا	experience (n)	خبرة - تجربة حياتية
message of thanks	رسالة شكر	darkness (n)	الظلام
food market (n)	سوق المواد الغذائية	weakness (n)	ضعف
pleased (adj)	مسرور	illness (n)	مرض
visitors (n)	زوار - ضيوف	topic (n)	موضوع
sweetness (n)	حلاوة - عذوبة	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
leaf (n)	ورق شجر	media (n)	وسائل الإعلام
salty (adj)	مالح	play (ed) (v), (n)	يعزف / يلعب / يمثل - مسرحية
pleasant (adj)	لطيف - ممتع		

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 89

tenant (n)	مستأجر	healthy meal (n)	وجبة صحية
factory (n)	مصنع	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
furniture (n)	أثاث (عفش)		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
read	يقرأ	read	read
come	يأتي	came	come
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

greeted	said hello	حيا / رحب بـ
lodger	someone who pays to live in another person's house	ساكن - نزيل
paid	**gave money for work** someone has done	دفع (مالًا)
tenant	**someone pays to live in** a house	مستأجر

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Man : Thank you all for coming along to the meeting[1]. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it clearly ?

Teen girl : What is the page from ? Is it a website[2]?

Check Vocabulary

(1) اجتماع (2) موقع إلكتروني

Man : Yes, it's a website for the local[3] community to share ideas, called a social network service page. We're going to start one, too. Is anyone interested in helping ?

Woman : It's a very good way to communicate[4] with everyone - after all, not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering leaflets[5].

Teen boy : How do we start ?

Check Vocabulary

(3) محلى | (4) يتواصل | (5) منشور - كتب

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Community Matters (1)

- The kindness[2] of strangers
  Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly neighbour[3] last week. He felt unwell, and someone kindly helped him to a bench to sit on for a rest.

- We need more trees !
  A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with pollution and also encourage more visitors[4] to our town. Who is interested in joining our project ?

- Computer repairs
  Hi neighbours- I have experience in repairing[5] computers and mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help !

- Let's help those in need !
  Please donate[6] food to people who don't have enough. Volunteers[7] are also wanted to help deliver boxes.

- Art class
  The community centre is going to be closed[8] on Saturday next week, from 4 pm - 7 pm, for an art class.

- Graffiti
  I was disappointed to see the graffiti[9] on the walls of the town hall. This is a historic[10] building ! What are we going to do about it ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) شؤون - أمور | (2) عطف - طيبة | (3) جار | (4) زوار | (5) إصلاح | (6) يتبرع | (7) متطوعين | (8) مغلق | (9) كتابة ورسوم على الجدران | (10) تاريخى

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

David Copperfield

by Charles Dickens

I was working in the factory(1) when one day, my manager greeted(2) me. "You have a visitor(3)", he said, "This is Mr Micawber".

"Pleased to meet you(4), David," said the man. "I'd like you to be my lodger(5)".

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife , their baby and two small children.

"I never thought that we'd need a lodger," said Mrs Micawber. "But we don't have enough money, you see".

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid for my food and room.

The Micawbers were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, "We have nothing to eat in the house !"

I tried to give her some money.

"I can't take this", she said. "But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?"

So, I sold some of their old books and furniture(6). I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal(7).

Check Vocabulary

(1) مصنع | (2) ألقى التحية | (3) زائر | (4) مسرور بمقابلتك | (5) ساكن - نزيل | (6) أثاث | (7) وجبة صحية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 lodger / tenant

- A lodger is a person who pays rent to live in somebody's house.

الساكن / النزيل هو شخص يدفع إيجارًا ليعيش فى منزل شخص ما.

- A tenant is a person who pays rent for the use of a room, building, land, etc. to the person who owns it.

المستأجر هو شخص يدفع إيجارًا لاستخدام حجرة، مبنى أو أرض ... إلخ للشخص الذى يمتلكه.

2 thanks to / thanks for

- **Thanks to** — بفضل / بسبب
  ex.: - Thanks to your help, I succeeded in my exams.
- **Thanks for (n/inf. + ing)** — شكرًا لـ / على
  ex.: - Thanks for helping me/ your help. I won't forget it forever.

3 help

- **help ... with ...** — يساعد ... فى ...
  ex.: - I helped my little sister with her homework.
- **help ... (inf. مصدر) / (to + inf. المصدر)**
  ex.: - I help my little sister do (to do) her homework.

4 experience / experiment

- **experience (n)** — خبرة (اسم لا يُعد)
  ex.: - Mr Badawi has got a lot of experience.
- **experiences (n)** — تجارب حياتية
  ex.: - I've a lot of experiences in my life.
- **experiment (n)** — تجربة معملية
  ex.: - In science lessons, we do experiments.

5 historic / historical

- **historic** — تاريخى (له أهمية فى التاريخ) مثلا مكان أثرى
  ex.: - This building is historic. It was built 300 years ago.
- **historical = related to history** — تاريخى (متعلق بالتاريخ)
  ex.: - This book is historical. It is about Mohammed Ali.

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

communicate with ... يتواصل مع	in need فى احتياج
forms of communication أشكال الاتصال / التواصل	move to ينتقل إلى
social networking sites مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	covered in مغطى بـ ...
	graffiti on the walls رسوم (جرافيتى) على الأسوار

felt unwell	شعر بأنه ليس على ما يرام	no facilities for ...	لا توجد مرافق / تسهيلات لـ ...
sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد ثابت	improve the situation	يُحسن الموقف
for a rest	للراحة ...	pleased to meet you	مسرور بمقابلتك
help with	يساعد فى ...	pay for ...	يدفع من أجل ...
have experience in	لديه / له خبرة فى ...	say hello	يرحب بـ
give me a call	يتصل بى (تليفونيًا)	show kindness	يظهر العطف
(be) closed on Saturday	يكون مغلق يوم السبت	for sale	للبيع
		donate food to people	يتبرع بطعام للناس

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I read an interesting ..... about the new museum.
   a. leaf b. meeting c. station d. leaflet
2. They put some ..... in the park, for people to sit on for a rest.
   a. tables b. benches c. beds d. games
3. I listen to many local radio ..... on my phone.
   a. decisions b. situations c. noticeboards d. stations
4. There is an article about my school in the local ..... .
   a. newspapers b. neighbours c. benches d. leaflets
5. Tourists are always pleased by the ..... of the Egyptians.
   a. weakness b. darkness c. kindness d. illness

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB I was disappointed to see the ..... on the walls of the town hall.
   a. leaflet b. graffiti c. network d. service
7. WB When we arrived at my grandparents' house, they came outside to ..... us.
   a. greet b. need c. plant d. bleed
8. WB It was sunny, so we were surprised by the ..... of the forest.
   a. darkness b. kindness c. illness d. weakness
9. WB The teacher will put a message about the new art class on the ..... .
   a. park b. bank c. noticeboard d. note

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. After finishing school, he started his own ..... .
    a. neighbour b. business c. traffic d. darkness
11. ..... you are rich, what will you buy ?
    a. Include b. Imagine c. Find d. Pay
12. When you meet someone for the first time, you can say " ..... to meet you".
    a. Afraid b. Pleased c. Local d. Terrible

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Thanks ..... my elder brother, I could achieve my goal and be a surgeon.
    a. for b. with c. about d. to
14. My neighbour's house is covered ..... painting and writings.
    a. in b. of c. about d. at
15. ..... me a call if you need help.
    a. Talk b. Do c. Give d. Send
16. There is a lot of ..... buildings in Egypt.
    a. history b. historian c. historic d. historical
17. He is very old. Sure, he has a lot of ..... .
    a. experiments b. experiences c. experts d. darkness

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
kind	طيب	friendly	unkind	غير طيب - قاس
well	سليم - معافٍ	fit/good	ill - unwell	ليس على ما يرام - مريض
remember	يتذكر	keep in mind	forget	ينسى
pleasant	سار - لطيف	nice / good	unpleasant	غير سار - مزعج
greet	يرحب	welcome = say hello to	ignore	يتجاهل
fail	يفشل	miss / fall	pass	يجتاز
			succeed	ينجح

noisy صاخب / عالى الصوت	loud	quiet هادئ silent صامت
poor فقير	needy	rich / wealthy غنى

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
– ness	تكوّن اسم	weakness ضعف kindness حسن المعاملة - الطيبة darkness ظلام
– y	تكوّن صفة	tidy مرتب happy سعيد angry غاضب
– er	تكوّن اسم الفاعل (الشخص)	stranger غريب
un –	تعطى عكس المعنى	unpleasant غير سار unwell ليس على ما يرام

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of "ill" is ..... .
   a. will b. well c. wall d. wheel
2. "Kind" has the same meaning of "..... ".
   a. unkind b. afraid c. frightened d. friendly
3. "....." means to say hello to someone.
   a. Greet b. Great c. Grow d. Cover
4. We add (-ness) to the word "weak" to form a / an ..... .
   a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
5. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "pleasant".
   a. un- b. ir- c. im- d. in-

3

III Language

Remember تذكر

Future with (Be going to) : المستقبل باستخدام (Be going to) :

Formation التكوين

subject + am / is / are + going to + inf. المصدر

Usage الاستخدام

1) Future plans : ١) الخطط المستقبلية التى تم التخطيط لها بالفعل

وللتعبير عن الخطط تستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

have plans لديه خطط — **make plans** يخطط

ex.: - I am going to travel to Hurghada this summer. This is my plan.

2) Intentions : ٢) النوايا

وللتعبير عن النوايا تستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

intend ينوى — **have intentions** لديه نوايا

My intention is ... ... قصدى هو

ex.: - We're going to travel by train. We have intended.

- I am going to build a house by the Nile. It's my intention.

3) Decisions : ٣) القرارات (المدروسة بتأنى)

وللتعبير عن القرارات تستخدم :

I've decided لقد قررت — **This is ... decision ...** هذا قرار

My decision is ... ... قرارى هو

ex.: - I'm going to buy a new car. This is my decision.

4) Predictions with evidence :

٤) التنبؤات المبنية على دليل مادى (يوجد بالمضارع ما يجعل من الممكن حدوث الشىء مستقبلاً)

ex.: - It's going to rain. I can see the dark clouds in the sky.

5) Actions which are about to happen :

٥) يستخدم أيضًا مع الأحداث على وشك الوقوع ومع بعض العبارات التحذيرية مثل :

(Look out ! / Be careful ! / Watch out !)

ex.: - Look out! He is going to crash his car.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm going to ..... to Alexandria next weekend.
   a. travelling b. travelled c. travel d. travels
2. She ..... buy a new car. She has decided that.
   a. going to b. is going to c. go to d. going
3. There are a lot of dark clouds. It ..... .
   a. will rain b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	c (going to) يتبعها فعل فى المصدر (inf.)
2	b الجملة تعبر عن نية لعمل شىء مستقبلًا لذا نستخدم (is going to)
3	c الجملة تعبر عن تنبؤ مبنى على دليل مادى (الحدوث شىء فى المستقبل)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises **تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

1. SB We ..... the walls, which are covered in graffiti and old posters.
   a. are painted b. are going to paint
   c. paint d. paints
2. SB What are we ..... about it ?
   a. going to do b. do c. will do d. did

3. WB What is going ..... next Saturday ?
   a. to happen b. happened c. happens d. happening
4. WB Volunteers are going to ..... up the park at 9 a.m.
   a. cleaning b. cleans c. cleaned d. clean

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. The manager ..... a meeting next Sunday, it's planned.
   a. is going to hold b. will hold
   c. held d. is holding
6. Heba intends to stay at home. She ..... go out.
   a. won't b. isn't going to c. didn't d. doesn't
7. Ahmed decided to start his own business. He ..... a clothes shop.
   a. will open b. opens c. is going to open d. opening
8. They aren't going to ..... their time watching TV.
   a. wasted b. waste c. wasting d. wastes
9. Nour ..... going to sleep early.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. hasn't d. never

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The street ..... (going) be closed on Saturday.
2. SB How are you going to ..... (encouraged) people to help you do this?
3. WB A famous architect is going to ..... (talked) at the new museum at 4 pm.
4. WB The Shakespeare's play King Lear ..... (going be) at the theatre at 6 pm.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. It's cloudy. It ..... (will) rain.
6. What are you going to ..... (doing) for tomorrow's exam ?
7. My father ..... (won't) stay in Cairo next summer. It's his plan.
8. Ashraf decided to paint his flat. He ..... (will call) a painter.
9. My mother's intention is to help me study. She ..... (will) explain this lesson for me.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق (Master Your Term) Part 2

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 28 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٥٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

1. How could David help Mrs Micawber ?

- **He sold some of their old books and furniture and gave her the money.**

- **Critical thinking skill :** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. What do you think of David's life with the Micawbers ?

- .....

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

- .....

مهارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

A. Read the sentences

"Community matters" **قضايا مجتمعية**

1. Helping an elderly neighbour is an act of kindness.
١. مساعدة جار متقدم فى السن هو أحد أنواع العطف.

2. You can help your local community by planting some trees along the streets.
٢. يُمكنك مساعدة مجتمعك المحلى بزراعة بعض الأشجار فى الشوارع.

3. Donating food to people who don't have enough is great work.
٣. التبرع بالطعام للناس الذين ليس لديهم ما يكفى هو عمل عظيم.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

Will - graffiti - is going to - Volunteers - lodger

1. I was disappointed to see the ..... on the walls.
2. It's dark. It ..... rain.
3. ..... are people who work for no money.
4. The new ..... is very kind. His room is opposite mine.

C. Writing a friendly letter :

كتابة الخطاب الودي

(Master Your Term) للمزيد من الشرح لمصطلحات الكتابة يمكنك الرجوع الى ملحق

"Model friendly letter" نموذج للخطاب الودي

Write a letter of about 110 words to your British friend Ann inviting her to visit Egypt. Tell her about the tourist attractions she will enjoy in Egypt.
Your name is Sama and you live at 22 Tahrir Street, Edfu, Aswan.

22 Tahrir St.,
Edfu, Aswan,
Egypt.
8th March

Address + Date ←

Greeting ↑

Dear Ann.

How are you ? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this letter to invite you to visit me here in Egypt. I'm sure you will enjoy every minute you will spend with us.
The weather in Egypt is wonderful. It is sunny and warm.
You can visit a lot of tourist attractions. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian Museum. In Giza, you can visit the Pyramids and the zoo. If you visit Aswan, you will enjoy visiting Abu Simbel Temples, the High Dam and the Plants' Island. In Luxor, you will visit El-Karnak Temple and the Valley of the Kings.
I hope you will accept my invitation. I'm looking forward to your reply.

Body →

Closing ←

Yours,
Sama

D. Practise by yourself

- Write a letter of about 110 words to your friend Adam telling him about how we can communicate with other people in our community.
- Your name is Omar and you live at 155 Talat Harb, Downtown, Cairo.

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Communication in the comunity : التواصل فى المجتمع :

Questions	Answers
1. Do you communicate with other people in your community ? - هل تتواصل مع الأشخاص الأخرين فى مجتمعك ؟	- Yes, I do. - نعم. أقوم بذلك.
2. Which form of communication could you use ? - أى من وسائل التواصل استطعت استخدامها ؟	- Social network service. - خدمة شبكة التواصل الاجتماعى.

Talking about community problems : التحدث عن المشكلات المجتمعية :

Questions	Answers
1. What are the problems in your community ? - ما هى المشكلات فى مجتمعك ؟	- Graffiti on the walls of the historic buildings and not enough leisure activities for young people. - الكتابة على جدران المبانى التاريخية وعدم وجود أنشطة ترفيهية كافية للشباب.
2. What are you going to do to improve the situation ? - ماذا سوف تفعل لتحسن الموقف الحالى ؟	- I'm going to clean the graffiti off the walls and start a new sports club. - سوف أنظف الجدران من الكتابة التى عليها وسأبدء العمل على نادى رياضى جديد.
3. How are you going to encourage people to help you do this ? - كيف ستقوم بتشجيع الأشخاص لمساعدتك فى فعل هذا ؟	- I'm going to make posters and write a post on social network service page. - سوف أصنع ملصقات وساكتب منشور على صفحة خدمات شبكة التواصل الاجتماعى.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Soha is telling her sister Maya about a novel she has read.

Maya : What are you doing, Soha ?

Soha : (1) ..... .

Maya : A novel ! That's great . (2) ..... ?

Soha : I started reading it last week.

Maya : (3) ..... ?

Soha : The writer is called Charles Dickens.

Maya : What's the title of the novel ?

Soha : (4) ..... .

Maya : Oliver Twist ! Is it an exciting novel ?

Soha : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The girl gave the thief her bag ..... fear.
   a. for b. in c. about d. of
2. My father is busy today because he has a lot of ..... .
   a. volunteers b. nephews c. neighbours d. meetings
3. They will move ..... their new flat next month.
   a. to b. off c. with d. up
4. Deaf people always communicate ..... each other in sign language.
   a. on b. form c. with d. for
5. We will remove the ..... on the wall of the important buildings. They are very bad.
   a. ideas b. volunteers c. bricks d. graffiti
6. To keep in ..... means to remember.
   a. minutes b. fear c. mend d. mind
7. SB Do you ..... with other people in your community ?
   a. collect b. encourage c. correct d. communicate

8. Randa ..... a new gold ring next week.
   a. is bought b. is going to be bought
   c. is going to buy d. bought
9. What are those dark clouds ? I think it ..... .
   a. rains b. is going to rain
   c. will rain d. is raining
10. SB We are going ..... our own social network service.
   a. to start b. to starting c. start d. starting

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Be) you going to buy that flat ?
2. What time is she going to ..... (finishing) the painting ?
3. SB What are we ..... (go to) do about it ?
4. Marwa ..... (going) meet her friend, Ola at the club. It's her decision.

4 Complete the sentences with these words :

streets - interested - pollution - plant - go

We need more trees ! A few of us are going to (1) ..... some trees along the (2) ..... . It will reduce (3) ..... and also encourage more visitors to come to our town. Who is (4) ..... in joining our project ?

5 Choose the correct word :

1 . WB Ahmed is not at school today because he is **ill / illness.**
2 . WB Volunteers are **going to / will** clean up the park at 9 am.

6 Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Ayman who lives in Kuwait, about the problems in your community :

Your name is Mahmoud and your email address is mahmoudhero@elmoasser.com.
Your friend's email address is aymanking@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

LESSONS

5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

happiness (n)	سعادة - ابتهاج	tourist attraction (n)	عامل جذب سياحى
however (adv)	ومع ذلك	furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك
firstly (adv)	أولًا	in addition (adv)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
summarise (d) (v)	يلخص - يوجز	conclude (d) (v)	يختم - ينهى

تنويه

- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق **Master**).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	adult (n), (adj)	بالغ - راشد
greetings (n)	تحيات	introductions (n)	مُقدمات
language (n)	لغة	daughter (n)	ابنة
situation (n)	موقف (حياتى)	repair (ed) (v) (n)	يصلح - إصلاح

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

invite (d) (v)	يدعو	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
extra (adj)	إضافى	contact (ed) (v)	يتصل
contrast (n)	تباين - تناقض	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
builder (n)	عامل بناء	result (n)	نتيجة
anymore (adv)	على الإطلاق - أبدًا	Heisa (n)	هيسا (جزيرة نوبية فى أسوان)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet	يقابل	met	met
become	يصبح	became	become

say	يقول	said	said
write	يكتب	wrote	written
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Narrator : One

Fares : Hi, there, Omar!
Omar : Hello, Fares!
Fares : Do you know my cousin, Adam ?
Omar : No, I don't.
Fares : Adam, meet(1) Omar. Omar, meet Adam.
Omar : Nice to meet you, Adam!
Adam : Nice to meet you, too.

Narrator : Two

Samira : Hi, there Ola!
Ola : Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa ?
She's just started working at our office.
Samira : No, we haven't met. It's a pleasure(2) to meet you
Randa : Pleased to meet you, too, Samira!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقابل | (2) بكل سرور

Narrator : Three

Sara : Good morning. I'd like to introduce[3] myself. I'm Sara. I'm your new neighbour.

Lamar : Pleased to meet you, Sara! I'm Lamar, and this my mother, Mrs Mansour.

Sara : Pleased to meet you both.

Mrs Mansour : It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara. Welcome to our neighbourhood !

Check Vocabulary

(3) يقدم / تعرف

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

a

Mrs Laila : Good morning, class. I'd like to introduce myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.

Class : Good morning, Mrs Laila.

b

Father : Heba, I'd like you to meet our new neighbour, Mr Baher.

Heba : Pleased[1] to meet you, Mr Baher.

Father : This is my daughter[2], Heba.

Mr Baher : Pleased to meet you too, Heba.

c

Hamdi : HI Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad ?

Basel : No, I don't.

Hamdi : Basel, meet Imad. We're in the same football team.

Basel : Nice to meet you[3], Imad.

Imad : Nice to meet you, too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مسرور | (2) ابنه | (3) سعدت بلقائك

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 30

Firstly[1], let me say how much we all love our Children's Library. However, it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore[2] because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada community project[3]. You can see a photo of their work above.

Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in "colours of happiness". We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore[4], the library will become a tourist attraction[5].

To conclude[6], we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project. If you are interested[7], please contact me!

Check Vocabulary

(1) أولاً	(2) على الإطلاق	(3) مشروع السعادة المجتمعية	
(4) علاوة على ذلك	(5) عامل جذب سياحي	(6) وفي الختام	(7) مهتم

on Lesson 6 WB page 91

Firstly, let me say how proud[1] we are of the castle[2] in our town. However , it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle walls, but some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.

At our community meeting[3], we decided to improve the castle. We are going to get some builders to repair[4] the walls.

Furthermore, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish.

To conclude, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a tourist attraction.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فخور	(2) قلعة	(3) لقاء مجتمعي	(4) يصلح

on Lesson 7 WB page 92

One day, I saw a message on the noticeboard(1) by the front door(2) to our flats. It said that Mr Maher, who is very elderly, needed a new bench. The one he sits on outside his flat is broken. So, I encouraged all my neighbours(3) to help to buy him a new one. Some men delivered it this morning. Mr Maher was very surprised when it arrived ! Mr Maher was very pleased by our kindness. Our neighbourhood is very friendly(4) and we like to help each other.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لوحة إعلانات | (2) الباب الأمامى | (3) الجيران | (4) ودود

on Lesson 7 SB page 31

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along(1) the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm elderly, you see. A young woman saw me and greeted me warmly(2). She encouraged me to sit down on a bench and have a rest (3).

It was so wonderful(4) to be treated with such kindness. That's why(5) I'm so happy to live in this neighbourhood. Our community is so kind and helpful !

Check Vocabulary

(1) يمشى على امتداد | (2) بود / بدفء | (3) تأخذ قسط من الراحة | (4) رائع | (5) ولهذا السبب

Videoscript

Narrator : There are many amazing projects that help communities in Egypt. Some of these projects help people, such as this one which helps people to get fresh water, and some help the environment, like these volunteers taking rubbish from rivers.

Bassita is a company that organises community projects. For example, the VeryNile projects helps to clean the River Nile. They take lots of rubbish, such as plastic, from the river. They then recycle the plastic.

Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags.
Another project provides clean water for many people.

The Makhad Trust helps people in the Sinai Peninsula.

They teach people to keep bees. These bees are going to make honey, which we use for food. The Makhad Trust also creates gardens so people can grow their own food.

Are there any community projects where you live ? What do they do to help your community?

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 as / like

* as + وظيفة

تدل على ان الفاعل يقوم بهذه الوظيفة.

ex.:- Haleem works as a doctor.

* like + وظيفة

تدل على أن الفاعل لا يعمل تلك الوظيفة ولكن طريقة الأداء تشبه تلك الطريقة المتبعة فى أداء الوظيفة.

ex.:- Haleem works like a doctor. He always checks before saying a word.

2 in addition to / in addition / furthermore / however

* in addition to ... (n. اسم / inf. + ing)

ex.:- In addition to being a trader تاجر , he works as a primary school teacher.

* in addition + فاعل + فعل .....

ex.:- He works as a primary school teacher. In addition, he is a trader.

* furthermore

تستخدم Furthermore لإضافة معلومات أكثر عن موضوع ما ويتبعها جملة (فاعل + فعل + ...)

ex.: SB - It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

* however = but

ومع ذلك - برغم ذلك - ولكن

تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض أو إعطاء معلومات متناقضة

ex.: - He is strong, but he can't carry the box.
- He is strong. However, he can't carry the box.
- He is strong, however, he can't carry the box.

3 formal / informal

* formal language

لغة رسمية

لاحظ : أن اللغة الرسمية تستخدم مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم.

* informal language

لغة غير رسمية

لاحظ : أن اللغة الغير رسمية تستخدم مع الأسرة والأصدقاء.

4 هناك بعض التعبيرات يستخدمها كاتب الرسالة / المقال لبدء أو إنهاء الرسالة / المقال

* Firstly, ... = To start with, ... — أولًا ... / لنبدأ بـ ...
* To conclude, ... — للختام ... / واختم بـ ...
* To summarise, = To sum up — اختصارًا / بالاختصار

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

introduce ... to ...	يقدم ... إلى ...
give reasons for	يعطى أسباب لـ ...
Nice to meet you!	من اللطيف أن أقابلك!
match ... with ...	يوصل ... بـ ...
a friend of yours / mine ... etc.	صديق لك / لى ... الخ
in the same football team	فى نفس فريق كرة القدم
look old	يبدو قديمًا / عجوزًا
at our community meeting	فى لقاء مجتمعى
decide to	يقرر أن
look like	يشبه
please contact me	من فضلك اتصل بى
the problem with ...	المشكلة فى ...
answer to ...	إجابة لـ / حل لـ ...
write a conclusion	يكتب ملخصًا / الخلاصة
add extra information	يضيف مزيد من المعلومات
give contrasting information	يعطى معلومات متناقضة
clean up	ينظف
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع
invite ... to ...	يدعو ... إلى ...
the front door	الباب الأمامى

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. ....., enter the website. Secondly, fill in the form.
   a. Furthermore b. Firstly c. However d. Then
2. To ..... , we are looking for builders to help us complete the building.
   a. contact b. greet c. introduce d. conclude
3. ..... is the state of feeling or showing pleasure.
   a. Weakness b. Happiness c. Illness d. Darkness
4. She was ill. ..... , she went to the club this morning.
   a. However b. Furthermore
   c. In addition d. In addition to

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. WB I'd like to ..... myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.
   a. meet b. paint c. introduce d. greet
6. WB You usually use ..... language with people you do not know.
   a. formal b. informal c. unsuitable d. local
7. SB When you write a / an ..... , you can use the expression "To summarise".
   a. introduction b. greeting c. conclusion d. contrasting
8. SB Use ..... language with your family and friends.
   a. formal b. informal c. foreign d. sign

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. I think the new museum will become a tourist ..... for Egypt.
   a. reaction b. result c. attraction d. reason
10. ..... can be practised on water when it is windy.
   a. Windsurfing b. Swimming c. Volleyball d. Running
11. If you are interested to come with me, please ..... me.
   a. introduce b. contact c. communicate d. summarise

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Shireen is a friend of ..... .
    a. I b. me c. my d. mine
13. ..... conclude, good always wins.
    a. With b. At c. In d. To
14. What's the problem ..... your bike, Basim ?
    a. with b. for c. of d. by
15. Noha works ..... a volunteer in a community charity.
    a. like b. as c. so d. such
16. He's so hungry. He is eating ..... a horse.
    a. as b. so c. that d. like

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
formal رسمى	official	informal غير رسمى
suitable مناسب - ملائم	appropriate	unsuitable غير مناسب - غير ملائم
correct صحيح	right	incorrect/ wrong غير صحيح/ خطأ
improve يحسن / يطور	develop	damage يتلف - يُدمر
happiness سعادة - ابتهاج	joy / pleasure	sadness حزن
helpful مفيد - مساعد	useful	helpless عاجز - ضعيف useless غير مفيد

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
in –	تكوّن العكس	informal غير رسمى
– ly	تكوّن الظرف	firstly أولًا
		warmly بدفء - بود

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Right" is the synonym of "..... ".
   a. correct b. light c. left d. formal

2. The opposite of official is "……".
   a. informal b. suitable c. warm d. wrong
3. The adjective "warm" can be an adverb by adding "……".
   a. -ed b. -ing c. -er d. -ly
4. To give the opposite of the word "formal" we add the prefix "……".
   a. in- b. im- c. un- d. dis-
5. The word "Firstly" is a / an …….
   a. verb b. adverb c. pronoun d. adjective

III Language

Lesson 7 WB page 82

1 because

جملة + because + subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - Heba doesn't like long bus journeys because she gets bored.

2 so

جملة + so + subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - Soha stayed up late, so she couldn't get up early.

3 which :

ex. - The Egyptian football team beat Brazil 3 - 0 which was a surprising result !

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. WB Dareen is really enjoying the book …… (so) it is very exciting.
2. WB Heba thought that Injy was ill …… (because) she was surprised to see her at school.

3. WB Kamal swam all along the beach ..... (where) was very tiring.

4. I lived in the house ..... (who) was built by my granddad.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٧١ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

1. Where is the writer sending the message to ?
   - **To a community network page.**

- **Critical thinking skill :** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. Why do you think they painted the building ?
   - .....

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   - .....

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

"Social network services page" **صفحة خدمة التواصل اللاجتماعى**

1. The library needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.
   ١. المكتبة فى حاجة للدهان. نحن نريد أن نشجع الأطفال على استخدام المكتبة مرة أخرى.
2. At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building.
   ٢. فى اجتماع الجماعة قررنا ان نطور المبنى.
3. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada Community.
   ٣. حصلنا على بعض الافكار من جمعية مشروع السعادة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

conclude - project - cleans - clean - informal

1. We usually use ..... language with friends.
2. We are going to ..... up the rubbish.
3. What is your ..... about ?
4. To ..... , we are looking for volunteers to help us.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى.

- Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Manar to tell her about your :

"Community project"

Your name is Heba and your email address is heba@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is manar@gmail.com.

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Using formal and informal greetings :

استخدام التحيات فى اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية :

Formal Language اللغة الرسمية	
- Hello	أهلًا/ مرحبًا
- How are you ?	كيف حالك ؟
- Pleased to meet you.	إنه من اللطيف مقابلتك.
- I'd like to introduce myself.	أود أن أقدم نفسى.
- Goodbye.	مع السلامة.
- I'd like you to meet	أود أن تقابل اسم الشخص.

Informal Language اللغة الغير رسمية	
- Hi / Hey	أهلًا
- How is it going ?	كيف تسير الأمور
- Nice to meet you.	سعدت بمقابلتك.
- How is your day ?	كيف يسير يومك ؟
- See you later.	أراك لاحقًا.
- Bye.	مع السلامة.
- This is	هذا .....

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is introducing his brother Omar to his friend Mustafa.

Ayman : Hello, Mustafa. This is my brother, Omar.

Mustafa : Hello, Ayman (1) ..... . How do you do, Omar ?

Omar : (2) ..... .

Ayman : Where are you going ?

Mustafa : (3) ..... .

Ayman : We are going to the supermarket, too.

Mustafa : (4) ..... ?

Ayman : To buy some groceries بقالة.

Mustafa : (5) ..... ?

Ayman : Of course, you can join us.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When I met my teacher, he ..... me warmly.
   a. told b. spoke c. greeted d. shouted
2. SB We use "To conclude" to write a/an ..... at the end of the topic.
   a. introduction b. conclusion c. greeting d. result
3. We can use "....." when we leave someone.
   a. Pleased b. Bye c. Good evening d. Hi
4. You can use "Good morning" as a/an ..... in the morning.
   a. conclusion b. introduction c. greeting d. reason
5. I can't find my English book. I will look ..... it in the living room.
   a. at b. for c. after d. up
6. My mother asked me not to ..... the same thing when I make a mistake I should not repeat my mistakes.
   a. do b. make c. have d. forgive

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

ممتاز
جيد جداً
جيد
غير جيد

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to .... فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على ان

1 **Learn important vocabulary** اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ leisure activities
- ☐ equal opportunities
- ☐ community
- ☐ deliver
- ☐ neighbourhood
- ☐ nephew
- ☐ furthermore
- ☐ graffiti

2 **Read and write sentences using present continuous to express arrangements, adjectives ending in (-ing) or (-ed) and future with (be going to) :**

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) و (-ed) والمستقبل القريب باستخدام (be going to)

- ☐ We are starting a project next month.
- ☐ The film was very boring.
- ☐ I was very surprised by the great result.
- ☐ The teacher is going to explain this lesson tomorrow.

3 **Talk about my community :** اتحدث عن مجتمعى :

- ☐ What are the best things about your community ?
- ☐ Are there any facilities for the disabled people in your town ?
- ☐ How can you improve the facilities for them ?
- ☐ What are the worst problems in your town ?

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر

جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 3

SB page 31 WB page 92

Vocabulary

sports activities	أنشطة رياضية
community	مجتمع
facilities	تسهيلات
transport	النقل والمواصلات
opportunities	فرص
difference	اختلاف
deliver	يُسلم
encourage	يشجع
neighbourhood	حى - مجاورة
do a survey	يقوم بدراسة بحثية
bench	مقعد (ثابت)
graffiti	رسوم على الحائط
charity	جمعية خيرية
greet	يرحب - يُحيّى
volunteers	متطوعين
conclude	يستنتج / يستخلص
disappointed	محبط
surprised	مندهش

Language

1. Adjectives ending in - (ing) or - (ed)

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تستخدم لوصف اسم

- **The film was boring.**

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تستخدم لوصف شعور

- **I was bored.**

2. Future with (be going to)

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية والنوايا والتنبؤات المبنية على دليل مادى

- What are you going to do tomorrow ?
- She's going to visit her aunt next week.
- There are a lot of dark clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.

Speaking

1. Describing communities

- وصف المجتمعات

(A) - Which people have made a difference in your community ?

- Doctors helped us in coronavirus pandamic جائحة فيروس كورونا.

(B) - How do you communicate with other people in your community ?

- Through social networking sites.

2. Describing communities problems :

- وصف المشكلات المجتمعية

- Too much traffic - ازدحام مرورى أكثر من اللازم
- Noisy neighbours - جيران مزعجين
- Lack of facilities - نقص المرافق
- Graffiti on the walls - الرسوم على الجدران

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ The Decent life initiative / A community project / Sports facilities in your town / Community matters/problems

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

- What services can you give to your community ?
- How can we encourage young people to do sports ?
- What are the community problems you want to solve ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- community	- proud of
- local shops	- kindness
- good transport	- volunteers
- opportunities	- posters
- encourage	- charity
- neighbourhood	- message of thanks
- handball	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I felt ..... when I came first.
- We are ..... to play football in the evening.
- We encouraged people to throw ..... their rubbish.
- I'm very proud of ..... .

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :**

"Services and facilities in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) فى كل وحدة والتى تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج

unit 3

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية قد تكون موضع اختبار

community	مجتمع	sports activities	أنشطة رياضية
facilities	تسهيلات	graffiti	رسوم على الحائط
opportunities	فرص	charity	جمعية خيرية
deliver	يُسلم / يوصل	greet	يُحيى
encourage	يشجع	volunteers	متطوعين
transport	نقل	disappointed	محبط

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. They are starting[1] to paint the wall tomorrow morning.
2. Ghada is going to[2] visit her aunt next week.
3. I'm interested[3] in music.
4. This story is very exciting[4] .

Check Language

(1) مضارع مستمر يعبر عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل
(2) مستقبل قريب (خطط) فى المستقبل باستخدام (going to)
(3) صفة منتهية بـ (-ed) تصف المشاعر
(4) صفة منتهية بـ (-ing) تصف اشياء

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Questions	Answers
1. Which people can make a difference in your community ?	- Young people can make a difference in our community.
2. What is the best way to communicate with other people in your community ?	- The best way is using social network services.

General Exercises on unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is meeting a tourist in the Egyptian Museum.

Ashraf : Welcome to Egypt. How do you do ?

Tourist : Hello, (1) .....

Ashraf : (2) ..... ?

Tourist : I'm from Italy.

Ashraf : (3) ..... ?

Tourist : I will stay for a week.

Ashraf : Is this your first visit ?

Tourist : (4) ..... . I have come here three times before.

Ashraf : What's your opinion about the Egyptian people ?

Tourist : (5) ..... . Really ! I like them very much.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Firstly, we all love our Children's Library. However, it now needs some work. The children don't like **it** anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite people to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El-Saada community project. There are many photos of this project. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in colours of happiness. We are going to do the same thing here ! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

To conclude, we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Explain why the children's library need some work. Give two reasons.

.....

2. What is the relation between the library and the houses in Mashrou El Saada ?

.....

3. In your point of view, are libraries important ? Why / Why not ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The passage is about ..... .
   a. Renewing the children's library
   b. voluntary work
   c. our community
   d. Mashrou El Saada

5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. project
   b. community
   c. painting
   d. library

6. Which of the following was mentioned in the passage ..... .
   a. the idea to make the library attractive
   b. asking for volunteers to help them
   c. painting houses in colours of happiness
   d. the location of the library

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We should take part in our community ..... .
   a. messages
   b. shops
   c. events
   d. accidents

2. All people shoud have ..... opportunities.
   a. different
   b. difficult
   c. remote
   d. equal

3. It was very ..... to sit under that tree drinking some tea.
   a. pleasant
   b. pleased
   c. violent
   d. disappointed

4. We all often listen to our local radio ..... daily.
   a. pavement
   b. platform
   c. station
   d. road

5. SB Your brother or sister's son is your ..... .
   a. cousin
   b. nephew
   c. uncle
   d. parent

6. WB Ahmed is not at school today because he is ..... .
   a. good
   b. careful
   c. ill
   d. well

7. SB I was very ..... to learn how many people didn't have enough food.
   a. surprised b. surprising c. bored d. boring
8. What time ..... deliver the new washing machine ?
   a. they are going to b. are they going to
   c. were they going to d. they were going to
9. Amira intends to fix her broken laptop next week. This means that
   a. she is going to fix it b. she fixed it
   c. she was fixing it d. she fixes it
10. SB The community centre ..... closed on Saturday next week.
   a. is going b. is going to
   c. is going to be d. is going to being

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When ..... (they going) go shopping ?
2. Where ..... (you go) to watch the match tomorrow ?
3. Adham ..... (go) to take an English course next summer.
4. I ..... (not going) travel to Luxor this week.

5 Complete the sentences with these words :

elderly - repeated - bench - greeted - along

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking (1) ..... the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm (2) ....., you see. A young woman saw me and (3) ..... me warmly. She encouraged me to sit down on a (4) ..... and have a rest.

6 Choose the correct word :

1 . WB Today's maths lesson was very **interested / interesting**. I learnt a lot.
2 . What are you going to **do / doing** to improve the park ?

7 WB Write a story of about (110) words on:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A person who made a difference in your community"

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 3 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. There are lots of sports activities 2. This museum is amazing ! 3. I don't like the sweetness of chocolate. 4. We use formal language 5. Kamal swam all along the beach.	a. ☐ There are so many old things here. b. ☐ I prefer salty food. c. ☐ with people we do not know. d. ☐ which was very tiring. e. ☐ for young people in the community. f. ☐ social network service.

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We were disappointed to see the **calligraphy** on the walls of our town. (.....)
2. I read an interesting **leaf** about a new museum. (.....)
3. The park is going to **being** close on Monday. (.....)
4. You can use **"Furthermore"** to write a conclusion. (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. That's rubbish. You can throw it ..... .
   a. up b. out c. away d. into
2. Everyone is happy so ..... laughing.
   a. she's b. they're c. he's d. it's
3. Your tasks will ..... keeping vocabulary and understanding language.
   a. include b. contain c. consist d. invite
4. Thanks ..... coming to my party today.
   a. for b. to c. with d. on
5. We should take more care of our ..... buildings.
   a. historical b. historic c. historian d. history

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Narrator 1

Voice : From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument. Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator 2

Voice : From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator 3

Voice : From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right. Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator 4

Voice : From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Museum of Natural Science

Last year, there was an amazing exhibition of sea animals at the Museum of Natural Science. While visitors were walking around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition will tell visitors about animal life in the desert.

Many people think that the desert doesn't have much life in it. This exhibition will show that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look!

The exhibition opens on the 5th of March. Tickets will be on sale now from the museum or online.

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

Tarek

I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.

Judy

My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.

on Lesson 1 WB page 93

Good morning, everyone. I'd like to introduce(1) myself. I'm Judy and I work for See the best of Cairo. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most famous ones, but we think they are the best ! Why ? Because they are neither full of tourists nor expensive, but they have some very interesting things to see.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقدم

A

Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the Egyptian Railways Museum[2]. It opens at 9 a m. Here you'll find trains but also some other historical[3] forms of transport, including planes. The museum is next to Cairo train station[4]. Then, at about 2 p m, we're going to the House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi. This is one of the oldest houses in the city, built in the seventeenth century[5]. It has beautiful windows, doors and even a fountain[6]. We know you won't be bored in either of these places !

Check Vocabulary

(2) متحف سكك حديد مصر | (3) تاريخى | (4) محطة قطار | (5) قرن | (6) نافورة

Listening

on Lesson 2 WB page 94

Man : Good afternoon, I'd like to make a complaint[1].

Assistant : What's the problem ?

Man : I ordered something from your website[2], but it hasn't arrived.

Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. What did you order ?

Man : A black kettle[3].

Assistant : A black kettle ? Why don't you come to our shop ?
We have one here. You don't have to pay[4] anything more.

Man : Thank you. Where is your shop ?

Assistant : It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and walk past[5] the clothes shop. We are on the left.

Man : What time do you open ?

Assistant : We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day except[6] Friday.

Check Vocabulary

(1) شكوى | (2) موقع إلكترونى | (3) غلاية مياه | (4) يدفع | (5) يمشى مارًا بـ | (6) عدا - باستثناء

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 1

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is talking to a clerk in the train station.

Ahmed : Where does the train to Aswan leave from ?

Clerk : (1)..... .

Ahmed : Platform five ! (2)..... ?

Clerk : The next train leaves in 5 minutes.

Ahmed : (3)..... ?

Clerk : It takes 7 hours to reach Aswan.

Ahmed : Are there any other trains to Aswan ?

Clerk : (4)..... .

Ahmed : What time does this one leave ?

Clerk : (5)..... .

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Tourists can see a lot of ..... in the Egyptian Museum.
   a. animals b. pyramids
   c. monuments d. canals
2. Which ..... does the train leave from ?
   a. ticket b. platform c. library d. office
3. The journey to Luxor was ..... . I enjoyed a lot.
   a. boring b. comfortable
   c. hard d. ugly
4. You can see beautiful fish at the ..... .
   a. cinema b. bank c. aquarium d. museum
5. I need to ..... some money from the bank.
   a. lend b. borrow c. give d. put
6. How ..... I go from Cairo to Qena ?
   a. does b. do c. done d. doing

3. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"Your journey to Luxor by train"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is making a complaint.

Assistant : How can I help you, sir ?

Ayman : My computer suddenly (1) ..... .

Assistant : Was it logged in before turning off ?

Ayman : Yes, (2) ..... .

Assistant : (3) ..... ?

Ayman : Yes, I was charging it.

Assistant : (4) ..... ?

Ayman : Yes, I turned it on again but it said my password was wrong.

Assistant : I'll send you some steps to follow.

Ayman : (5) ..... .

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can make hot drinks using a ..... .
   a. toaster b. coffee machine
   c. fridge d. microwave
2. This shop has a ..... . All the clothes are cheaper than usual.
   a. sail b. sell c. sale d. seal
3. What is the ..... on clothes ?
   a. dial b. deal c. dear d. deer
4. When you are unhappy about something, you can make a ..... .
   a. mistake b. discount
   c. complaint d. fire
5. ..... people think only about bad things.
   a. Healthy b. Negative c. Positive d. Clever
6. We ..... the flat for my sister's birthday.
   a. damaged b. burnt
   c. decorated d. took

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Your mobile is ..... (cheap) than mine. (.....)
2. Neither Heba ..... (or) Sara visited Luxor. (.....)
3. ..... (Either) Ahmed and Alaa are happy. (.....)
4. The phone ..... (break) while I was running. (.....)

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Young people can practise many ..... at sports centres.
   a. recipes b. sports activities
   c. pavements d. shops
2. ..... people are those who can't walk and use wheelchairs.
   a. Deaf b. Disabled c. Blind d. Story
3. Many shops nowadays can ..... their products to customers.
   a. prepare b. damage c. deliver d. discover
4. My father always ..... me to do sports.
   a. delivers b. encourages
   c. coughs d. laughs
5. Walking or running regularly ..... a great difference to your health.
   a. makes b. takes c. puts d. gives
6. My plan is to have a trip next Sunday. I ..... to Luxor.
   a. am travelling b. 'm going to travel
   c. travel d. will travel

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The children are very ..... (exciting) as they have a new toy. (.....)
2. Heba is ..... (interesting) in reading adventure stories. (.....)
3. They ..... (will) to visit their aunt next Friday. (.....)
4. When are you ..... (go) to revise for the exam ? (.....)

3. Write an email of about (110) words :

" to your friend Yassir about what you are going to do next week. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com.Your friend's email address is yassir@gmail.com."

.....

.....

.....

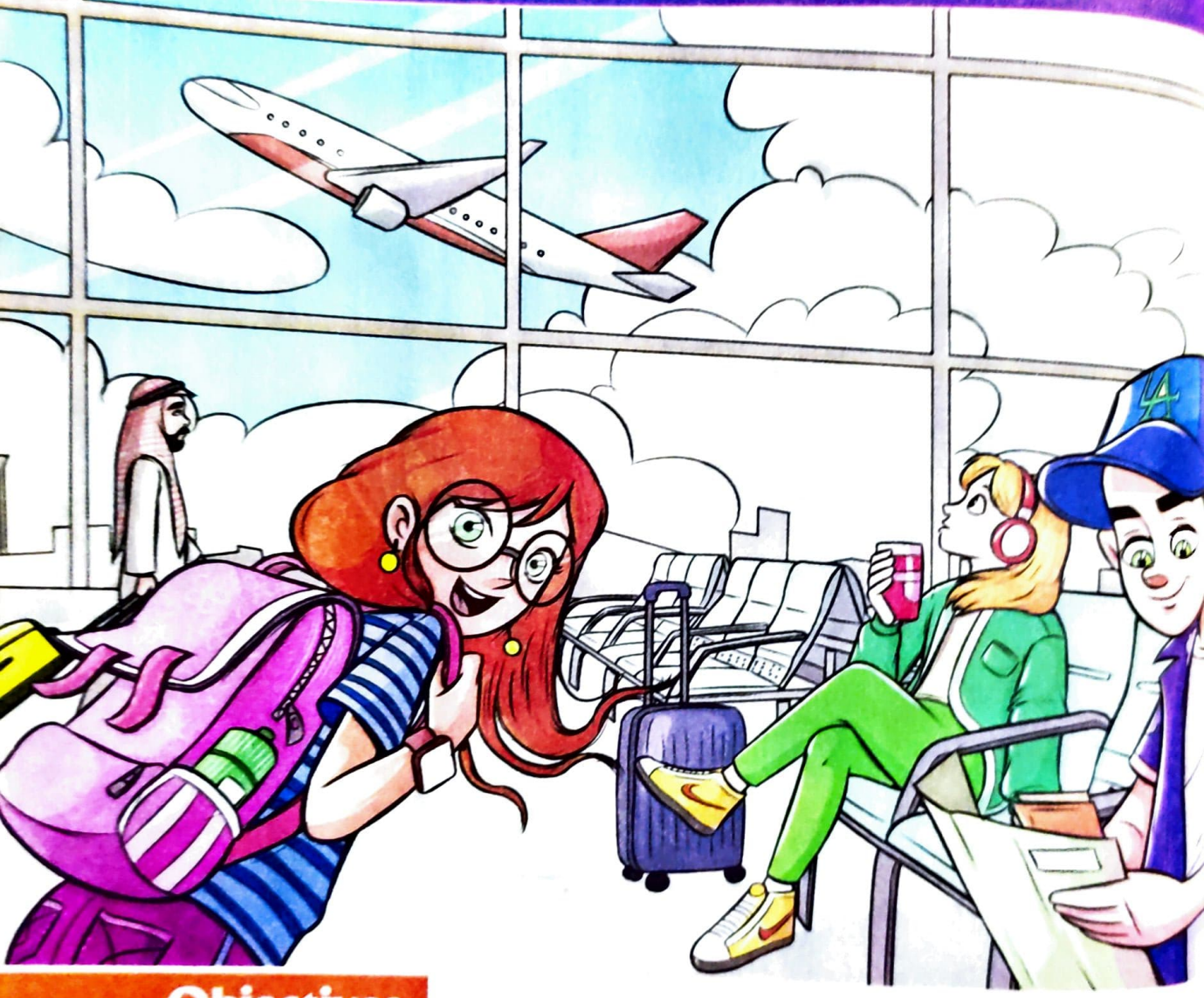
.....

.....

UNIT 4

Have you ever travelled by plane ?

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 85:101



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn; a text about someone's life
- **Writing :**
  A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person
- **Listening :**
  An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story
- **Language :**
  The present perfect with ever, never, *for* and *since*
- **Life Skills :**
  Communication

الأنشطة الوحدة
- للمناقشة اليومية و الامتحان مع Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر للغوى

أسئلة كل وحدة تحليل
- العلامة تنسيق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة تنسيق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 95 & 96

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس تحت سطح الماء باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	competition (n)	مسابقة
experience (n)	خبرة - تجربة حياتية	orphanage (n)	دار الايتام
		marriage (n)	زواج

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

Chinese food (n)	طعام صينى	beach restaurant	مطعم داخل شاطئ
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	graph (n)	رسم بيانى
adventure (n)	مغامرة	report (n)	تقرير
tent (n)	خيمة	half (n)	نصف ($\frac{1}{2}$)
camel (n)	جمل	wedding party (n)	حفل زفاف
list (n)	قائمة		

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

move (d) (v)	ينتقل - ينقل	headache (n)	صداع (ألم فى الرأس)
period (n)	مدة - حقبة	flat (n)	شقة
point (n)	نقطة / حد	history (n)	تاريخ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
do/does	يفعل	did	done

read	يقرأ	read	read
win	يفوز	won	won
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study this definition

ادرس هذا التعريف

experience something that happens in your life — خبرة / تجربة حياتية

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 35

I asked the people in my class about their experiences[1]. Most people in the class have played a musical[2] instrument. Not many people have ridden a horse or slept in a tent[3]. Even fewer people have snorkelled[4]. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane[5], but Hazem has travelled by plane three times!

Experiences of people in the class

I also asked, 'Have you ever been to a football match[6]?' About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class[7] have.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تجارب (حياتية) (2) آلة موسيقية (3) خيمة (4) يغطس تحت سطح الماء باستخدام أنبوب التنفس
(5) يسافر فى طائرة (6) مباراة كرة قدم (7) نصف الفصل

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Talia : Grandma, how long have you lived in this house ?

Grandmother : Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.

Talia : Really ? How long have you been married to grandad ?

Grandmother : We've been married for fifty years !

Talia : That's a long time !

Grandmother : Yes, it is ! And we've known each other since we were ten years old.

Talia : That's like Mum and Dad. They've known each other for a long time, too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother : Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia : Did they ? I didn't know that !

Grandmother : You've never asked me about it before!

Reading

on Lesson 2 WB page 96

Judy : Dad, how long have you worked at the bank ?

Dad : I've worked there since we moved to Cairo.

Judy : How long have you lived in Cairo ?

Dad : We've been in Cairo since you were born, but we lived in a different flat then.

Judy : How long have you lived in this flat ?

Dad : Well, we've lived here for ten years.

Judy : So, my brother Imad has always lived here ?

Dad : Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here for all of his life.

Videoscript

Tourist have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders[1] of the ancient world, such as the pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world, such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are lots of activities[2] to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting, like snorkelling.

Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination[3] since the 1960s. This is because the water here is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs and there are some amazing sea animals, such as this dugong and these lionfish. Have you ever been to Dahab ? Have you ever been snorkelling ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) عجائب | (2) انشطة | (3) وجهة النظر

Skills corner

★ **تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :**

- **مهارة القراءة :** تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات – اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص – مهارة التفكير النقدي.
- **مهارة الكتابة :** تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم – التهجى – ترابط الأفكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).
- **مهارة التحدث :** تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة فى الامتحان.

المعاصر فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 wait for - wait to

* wait for

ينتظر (شخص - اتوبيس - قطار ...)

ex.: - I'm waiting for the six o'clock train.

- I waited for you, but you were late.

* wait to + (inf.)

ينتظر (يتبعها مصدر الفعل)

ex.: - I've been waiting to know who won the match.

2 since

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويتبعها (بداية مدة) أو جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

ex.: - W3 We've been in Cairo since you were born.

- I've waited for the bus since six o'clock.

ويمكن استخدام (since) بمعنى because

ex.: - Wafaa got sick since she 'd eaten badly cooked food.

3 experience / experiences

* experience

خبرة (اسم لا يُعد)

ex.: - Mr Baleegh has years of experience in teaching English.

* (an) experience ⟶ experiences

تجربة (حياتية) (اسم يُعد)

ex.: - Seeing a lion out of its cage was an experience I can't forget.

- I've passed many bad experiences in my life.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

swim in a pool	يسبح فى حمام السباحة	get married	يتزوج
do the housework	يقوم بأداء أعمال المنزل	It's important to + (inf.) ...	إنه من المهم أن ...
make the food for	يُعد الطعام لـ ...	move to	ينتقل الى
make a kite	يصنع طائرة ورقية	more than 20 years	أكثر من ٢٠ عامًا
travel by plane	يسافر بطائرة	the longest marriage	أطول فترة زواج
ride a horse	يركب حصان	about an hour	حوالى ساعة
snorkel in the sea	يغطس فى البحر (بأنبوب التنفس)	on business	فى (رحلة) عمل
		finish on time	ينتهى فى الوقت المحدد

try Chinese food	يجرب طعام صينى	at the bank	فى البنك
sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة	travelling by air	السفر جوًا
about half the people in the class	حوالى نصف الاشخاص فى الفصل / الطلاب	for a point in time	لنقطة زمنية
		for a period of time	لمدة من الزمن
have a headache	لديه صداع	all of his life	طوال حياته
make a cake	يصنع كيك (تورتة)	go to a farm	يذهب إلى مزرعة
write a list of	يكتب قائمة لـ	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
arrive on time	يصل فى الوقت المحدد	play a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
drink a cup of coffee	يشرب فنجان من القهوة		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. In summer, I really enjoy ..... in the sea.
   a. winning b. snorkelling c. hiding d. flying
2. My wife and I have lived in that flat since our ..... .
   a. death b. university c. birth d. marriage
3. A/An ..... is a home for children whose parents are dead.
   a. marriage b. orphanage c. airport d. aquarium
4. My daughter is good at painting. She always wins art ..... .
   a. inventions b. competitions c. invitations d. situations
5. Today, all students in my class are talking about their ..... .
   a. respect b. expects c. experiences d. experts

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB Fady has had a/an ..... for about an hour. His head still hurts.
   a. headache b. stomachache c. nosebleed d. earache
7. SB Most people in the class have never ..... by plane.
   a. known b. drawn c. travelled d. thrown
8. WB Have they ..... the food for the wedding party ?
   a. won b. written c. made d. drunk

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Adel was excited. He had a lot of ..... in the Red Sea coast.
   a. meals b. discussions c. problems d. adventures
10. When I was at the Pyramids, I saw many tourists riding ..... .
   a. taxis b. cars c. camels d. planes
11. I slept in a ..... when I was in Siwa Oasis.
   a. tank b. tent c. box d. cabin

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Heba was absent from school for a ..... of time.
   a. period b. sign c. point d. stop
13. She is going to ..... married in spring.
   a. get b. fly c. do d. stay
14. I'm waiting for the train for ..... half an hour.
   a. till b. from c. about d. until
15. It's important ..... healthy.
   a. stay b. to stay c. stays d. staying
16. Who are you waiting ..... ?
   a. in b. for c. to d. out

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
fewer	اقل (عددًا)	smaller	more	اكثر (عددًا)
important	هام	essential - serious	unimportant	غير هام
longest	الأطول	tallest	shortest	الأقصر
different	مختلف	unlike	the same	نفس الشئ

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/suffix	function الوظيفة	example مثال
- ese	تكون صفة من الاسم	Chinese
- ache	تعطى معنى ألم فى اجزاء الجسم	headache

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The antonym of the word "different" is the ..... .
   a. difficult b. similar c. easy d. same
2. Hania is the shortest girl, but Mai is the ..... .
   a. short b. taller c. tallest d. shorter
3. The suffix "....." means pain in your body.
   a. - ese b. - ache c. - er d. - ed
4. We add "ese" to China to make it a/an ..... .
   a. verb b. adverb c. adjective d. pronoun

III Language

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement : الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

I, we, you, they, اسم جمع
He, she, it, اسم مفرد
→ have / has + P.P. التصريف الثالث

ex.: - I have found a pen. - She has studied hard.
- My uncle and aunt have written me an email.

2 Negative statement : الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

I, we, you, they, اسم جمع
He, she, it, اسم مفرد
→ have not (haven't) / has not (hasn't) + P.P. التصريف الثالث

ex.: - We have not (haven't) finished studying English yet.

3 Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No question : أ) السؤال بـ « هل » :

Have / Has	+	subject الفاعل	+	p.p. ..... ?

ex.: - Have you eaten Chinese food ?
- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.
- Has she cooked fish yet ?
- Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

B) Wh - question : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

question word كلمة استفهام	+	have / has	+	subject الفاعل	+	p.p. ..... ?

ex.: - What have you brought ? - Where has Ali gone ?
- I have brought my bag. - He has gone to Paris.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى بدون تحديد وقت حدوثه (أى أن الوقت لا يكون من المهم ذكره).

ex.: - My favourite writer has written a new book.
- I have been deaf all my life.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد مرات الفعل أو الكم وذلك فى وجود كلمات مثل

two / three ..... / many / a few / several / a lot of

ex.: - I have drunk two cups of coffee.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الآن.

ex.: - I have lived in Aswan since 2007.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وله أثر فى الحاضر.

ex.: - My hands are dirty. I have mended my bike.

لاحظ أن : عند تحديد وقت وقوع الحدث فى الماضى نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex.: - Tamer has sent me an email. He wrote it **yesterday**.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

غالبًا ما يأتى المضارع التام مع :

just	حالاً/توًا	never	أبدًا	yet	حتى الآن	for	لمدة
already	بالفعل	ever	من قبل	since	منذ		

1 The Present Perfect with "ever" and "never" :

A) "ever" with Yes / No question :

تستخدم "ever" مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال بـ «هل» بمعنى «من قبل». (عند السؤال عن خبرة سابقة)

Formation التكوين

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + ever + P.P. ..... ?

للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم :

Yes, الفاعل + have / has.

No, الفاعل + haven't / hasn't.

ex.: - **Have** you ever been to the desert ?

- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.

B) "never" with negative sentences :

تستخدم "never" مع زمن المضارع التام عند النفى. (تعبر عن عدم وجود خبرة سابقة)

Formation التكوين

Subject الفاعل + have / has + never + P.P. ..... .

ex.: - He's never ridden a camel and he has never seen the sea.

لاحظ أن :

عند استخدام (never) فى الجملة فإننا لا ننفى بـ (not) حيث أنها تحمل معنى النفى.

• Asking and answering using "ever & never"

يمكن استخدام (ever) فى السؤال والإجابة عليه بـ (never) عند النفى.

ex.: Have you ever met a famous person ?

- No, I have never met a famous person. - للإجابة بالنفى :

- Yes, I have. I met a football player once. - للإجابة بالاثبات :

2 The Present Perfect Tense with (for & since) :

زمن المضارع التام مع (for & since) :

A) for : (a period of time) أ) لمدة : ويأتى بعدها المدة التى استغرقها حدوث الفعل

Formation التكوين

Subject فاعل + have / has + P.P. .... + for + (مدة وقوع الحدث)

- 3 days / 4 months / 2 years
- a long time / an hour
- five hours
- long
- the last .....

ex.: - I have lived here for 13 years.
- Have you been at this school for a long time ?
- No, I have only been here for a month.

B) since : (for a point of time)

ب) منذ : ويأتى بعدها تعبير زمنى يدل على بداية حدوث الفعل

Formation التكوين

subject فاعل + have / has + P.P. .... + since + (بداية الحدث)

- 2009/2014 سنة ماضية
- May/Sunday شهور أو أيام
- last week, year, ...
- yesterday
- then
- he went abroad

(جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط)

ex.: - I have studied English since I was eight years old.
- Has your uncle worked at the hospital since he moved to Cairo ?
Yes, he has worked there since 2008.

لاحظ ما يلى جيدًا :

subj. فاعل + have / has been to / have / has gone to + place مكان

ذهب وعاد

ذهب ولم يعد بعد

ex.: - I've been to Paris three times. I want to go there again.
- Ahmed has gone to the club. You can join him there now.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Has she ..... ridden a horse ? - Yes, she has.
   a. just b. never c. ever d. yet
2. My sister has been good at tennis ..... she was ten.
   a. for b. since c. when d. just
3. Adam has ..... eaten Chinese food.
   a. lately b. yet c. ever d. never
4. I love chess, so I ..... a chess club in my village.
   a. joined b. has joined c. have joined d. joining
5. We 've lived here ..... ten years.
   a. for b. since c. ago d. just

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	تستخدم (ever) فى السؤال مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال عن خبرات سابقة
2	b	تستخدم (since) مع زمن المضارع التام ويأتى بعدها جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط
3	d	تستخدم (never) مع زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن النفى
4	c	تم استخدام زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى بدون ذكر التوقيت وفاعل الجملة (I)
5	a	تستخدم (for) مع زمن المضارع التام ويتبعها المدة التى استغرقها حدوث الفعل

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB I haven't ..... Chinese food.
   a. eat b. ate c. eaten d. eats
2. SB Have you ever ..... to a football match ?
   a. been b. to be c. being d. be
3. SB Hania ..... played tennis many times.
   a. have b. to have c. having d. has

4. WB How long have you ..... in this house ?
   a. lived b. live c. lives d. living
5. WB We've been married ..... more than fifty years !
   a. since b. for c. yet d. never

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. She hasn't seen her father ..... she was a child.
   a. ever b. since c. for d. yet
7. Khalid has ..... his friend Tamer for a long time.
   a. known b. knowing c. knows d. know
8. Mohamed and Sara ..... been married since last year.
   a. has b. to have c. have d. having
9. Has Salma ..... ridden a horse ? – Yes, she has.
   a. never b. for c. ever d. since
10. They have ..... visited the Egyptian Museum before.
    a. ever b. never c. since d. for
11. They haven't ..... any money.
    a. get b. gets c. getting d. got
12. Has Ali found his lost bag ? – No, he ..... .
    a. has b. haven't c. hasn't d. have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Has Lina ever ..... (see) that film ?
2. WB Twelve people ..... (has) ridden a camel.
3. WB I've lived in the same house ..... (for) I was born.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. He hasn't ..... (reading) that book before.
5. Mai has watched TV ..... (since) two hours.
6. Mr Tamer has been at this school ..... (for) 2001.
7. Hassan has ..... (have) a headache for 3 hours.
8. Have you ..... (never) visited the zoo ?
9. No, Salwa has ..... (ever) travelled by plane.
10. They have ..... (buying) a new house.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 35 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٩٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think fewer students have snorkelled ?

   - **Maybe because it's not their favourite activity.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Who has travelled by plane three times ?

   - .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

3. The word "**many**" in the passage is the opposite of ..... .

   a. few b. more c. much d. enough

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى.

1. There are many things I've done. ١. يوجد أشياء كثيرة فعلتها.
2. I have snorkelled in the Red Sea. ٢. لقد سبحت بأنبوب الغطس فى البحر الأحمر.
3. I have been to a football match at Cairo Stadium. ٣. لقد ذهبت لمباراة كرة القدم فى إستاد القاهرة.
4. I have slept in a tent in the desert. ٤. لقد نمت فى خيمة فى الصحراء.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

have - ever - long - has - been - for

1. How ..... have you practised football ?
2. They have ..... married since 1990.
3. Has she ..... flown a kite ?
4. Adel ..... been at this school for 5 years.
5. The boys ..... got many pens.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى.

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Talking about experiences : **الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة :**

Questions	Answers
1. Have your parents always lived in the same house, or have they moved ? هل عاش والديك دائمًا فى نفس المنزل أم قاموا بالإنتقال إلى منزل آخر ؟	- Yes. They have lived in the same house. نعم. لقد عاشوا فى نفس المنزل.
2. How long have you lived in your house ? كم المدة التى عشتها فى منزلك ؟	- I've lived there since I was born. لقد عشت هناك منذ ميلادى.
3. How long have you studied English ? كم المدة التى درست بها اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- I've studied English since I was seven. لقد درست اللغة الإنجليزية منذ عمر ٧ سنوات.
4. Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain ? هل قام أحد أفراد أسرتك بتسلق جبل ؟	- Yes, my cousin has climbed a mountain. نعم. تسلق ابن عمى جبل.
5. Which people in your family have been to another country ? أى الأشخاص فى عائلتك قام بالذهاب إلى دولة أخرى ؟	- My father has been to England. قام والدى بالذهاب إلى انجلترا.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Marawan is phoning his friend, Tamer who's getting ready to travel to London.

Marawan : Hi, Tamer. How are you ?
Tamer : (1) ..... , and you ?
Marawan : (2) ..... .
Tamer : (3) ..... ?
Marawan : I'm getting ready to fly to London.
Tamer : London ! Why will you travel there ?
Marawan : (4) ..... .
Tamer : Your cousins ! (5) ..... ?
Marawan : I'll stay there for a week.
Tamer : Great ! A week is enough to see London, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I haven't ..... a horse before.
   a. climbed b. moved c. ridden d. flown
2. Have you ever ..... in the sea ?
   a. flown b. snorkelled c. slept d. ridden
3. WB Has anyone in your family ..... a mountain ?
   a. got b. climbed c. ridden d. moved
4. My friend asks me if I have ..... in a tent before.
   a. slept b. moved c. ridden d. flown
5. I ..... a terrible headache.
   a. have b. make c. do d. enjoy
6. WB I have never ..... Chinese food. I might try it next time.
   a. ridden b. snorkelled c. tried d. been
7. WB My parents ..... married in 2001.
   a. gave b. got c. did d. found

8. Hatem ..... in this company since 2005.
   a. works b. is working
   c. have worked d. has worked

9. ..... a novel by Charles Dickens ?
   a. Have you ever read b. Have you read ever
   c. Have read ever you d. Have ever you read

10. WB My family has been in Cairo ..... I was ten.
   a. ever b. never c. for d. since

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Shadi has walked ..... (since) two hours.
2. Adel has ..... (never eat) Chinese food.
3. WB Have you ever ..... (make) a cake ?
4. WB Has he finished on time ? – Yes, he ..... (hasn't).

4 SB Complete the sentences with these words :

eaten – ridden – tent – rode – travelled

I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most people in the class have (1) ..... Chinese food. Not many people have (2) ..... a horse or slept in a (3) ..... . Even fewer people have snorkelled. Most people in the class have never (4) ..... by plane.

5 Choose the correct word :

1 . Have you ever **try / tried** Chinese food ?
2 . WB I have **drank / drunk** two cups of coffee.

6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your experiences"

LESSONS

3 & 4

SB pages 38 : 40 WB pages 97 & 98

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

grandparents (n)	الأجداد	canoe (n)	
dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم - حلم	deaf (adj)	
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	follow(ed) (v)	
care (d) about (v)	يعتني بـ - يهتم بـ	countryside (n)	
raft (n)	قارب بدائي - طوافة - عوامة	hard of hearing (adj)	

تذكير
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقص على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 97

join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	change (d) (v), (n)	
sports club (n)	نادي رياضي	sign language (n)	
fun (n)	متعة	special school (n)	
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	continue (d) (v)	
instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية	Cairo Opera House	
Athens (n)	أثينا (عاصمة اليونان)		

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 98

fun novels (n)	روايات فكاهية / مضحكة	scare (d) (v)	
sequel (n)	تتمة - تكملة	fog (n)	
teenage boys (n)	أولاد في سن المراهقة	similarities (n)	
forest (n)	غابة	wood (n)	
fun game (n)	لعبة مرح - متعة	float (ed) (v)	
foggy (adj)	ضبابي - غير واضح	environment (n)	
terrible (adj)	فظيع - مريع	return (ed) (v)	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
let	يسمح	let	let
hide	يخفى / يختفى	hid	hidden
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
say	يقول	said	said

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

awake	not sleeping	مستيقظ
canoe	a long, narrow boat for one or two people	زورق (طويل وخفيف) ضيق
care about	feel strongly about someone or something	يهتم بـ
dream	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping	حُلم
follow	walk or drive behind someone	يتتبع
raft	pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water	قارب بدائى - طوافة

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Maher

I have lived in a village[1] in the south of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another country, but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins ! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of museums because I am very interested in history[2].

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية | (2) تاريخ

Azza

I have had hearing problems[3] all my life and I learnt sign language[4] from when I was a baby. When I first started school, I went to a special school[5] for deaf children. Now, I have been at a local school[6] for three years. I am the only hard of hearing person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use sign language to help me. She explains things I can't understand in sign language. Some of my friends have learnt some sign language, so they can help me, too.

Wael

My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my grandparents[7] since I was one. We used to live in the countryside[8], but we moved to[9] the city three years ago. I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined a handball club[10] and I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun.

Check Vocabulary

(3) مشاكل فى السمع	(4) لغة الإشارة	(5) مدرسة لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	(6) مدرسة محلية
(7) الأجداد	(8) الريف	(9) انتقل إلى	(10) انضم لنادى كرة اليد

• on Lesson 3 SB page 39

My name's Salma. I was born in Syria[1], but my family came to Egypt when I was five years old. We haven't visited Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there.

When I was eight, I started playing the piano. I have played in many concerts[2]. I love music. Two years ago, I played at a concert in the Cairo Opera House[3]. It was amazing[4] !

Check Vocabulary

(1) دولة سوريا	(2) حفلات موسيقية	(3) دار الأوبرا المصرية	(4) مدهش / مذهل

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer

They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest, his Aunt Polly worried about him. She thought he was lost or badly hurt. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine.

"It was just a game, Aunt Polly", said Tom.

"I'm sure it was a fun game for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me ? "I told you in a dream(1), said Tom. "I just forgot to tell you when I was awake(2)". "He never thinks of other people", said his cousin Mary. "Yes, you should think about other people", said Aunt Polly. "You know I care about(3) you, Tom. Try to remember how other people feel". "I'm sorry that I didn't tell you", said Tom. "It won't happen again".

Check Vocabulary

(1) حلم | (2) مستيقظ | (3) يهتم بـ

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

Jim and I were on a raft(1) going down the river when it became foggy(2). I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. I got into a small canoe(3) and went along the river. Then I tried to return. However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out but I could not hear Jim.

My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following(4) me. I travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim. He was sleeping on the raft. I climbed on the raft and said. "Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping"? "I was scared! he said. "I couldn't see anything because it was foggy!". He looked angry. "I had a terrible night, Huck!" he said. "It was like a bad dream". "I'm sorry," I said. From that time, I decided I would never scare(5) him again.

Check Vocabulary

(1) طوافة / عوامة | (2) ضبابى / غير واضح | (3) زورق طويل ضيق | (4) يتتبع | (5) يخيف

• on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals. He started to like them when he visited an aquarium for the first time in 2015. His family have taken him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium asked him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that ! He has helped at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He has given food to most of the small fish, but he hasn't helped with the sharks. They are too dangerous !

Listening

• on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Teen boy : I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it ! It was very quiet !

Teen girl : My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week, I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me some famous buildings there on their phone.

Woman : I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years. I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn as quickly as the children !

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 concert - concrete

* **concert** حفلة موسيقية

ex.: Omar Khairat always gives regular concerts. He is a great musician.

* **concrete** خرسانة

ex.: Modern houses are made of concrete and bricks.

2 special school - private school

* special school — مدرسة خاصة (تقدم نوعية معينة من التعليم)

ex.: The government is building special schools for the disabled.

* private school — مدرسة خاصة (ليست ملكًا للحكومة)

ex.: - My grandchildren go to a private school. It costs my son a lot of money.

3 let - allow — يسمح - يدع

let + مفعول + inf. المصدر

ex.: Please, let me go into the club.

allow + مفعول + to + inf. المصدر

ex.: Please, allow me to go into the club.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

interested in	مهتم بـ	use sign language	يستخدم لغة الاشارة
all my life	طوال حياتى	badly hurt	مصاب بشدة
a special school for deaf children	مدرسة خاصة للأطفال الصم	had a terrible night	قضيت ليلة مريعة
		say sorry to	يتأسف لـ ...
at a local school	فى مدرسة محلية	feel strongly about	يشعر بقوة تجاه
win a match	يفوز بمباراة	go down the river	ينزل النهر
learn a language	يتعلم لغة	join a sports club	ينضم إلى نادى رياضى

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The ..... use sign language to communicate with others.
   a. disabled b. blind c. young d. deaf

2. Your ..... are your grandfather and grandmother.
   a. granddaughters b. grandsons
   c. grandparents d. grandchildren

3. When we were on holiday, we went down a river in a ..... . It was great fun!
   a. camel b. candle c. canoe d. can

4. To ..... is to walk or drive behind someone.
   a. feel b. file c. follow d. fail

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. WB The hotel room was very noisy, so I was ..... all night!
   a. happy b. comfortable c. awake d. strange

6. WB Last night, I had a strange ..... . I thought I was flying!
   a. game b. toy c. dream d. decision

7. WB Like many young people, Azza and her brothers really ..... about the environment.
   a. hurry b. cry c. care d. carry

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. To ..... this sports club, you have to fill in this form.
   a. destroy b. join c. call d. believe

9. I couldn't see anything on the road because it was ..... .
   a. angry b. fresh c. clear d. foggy

10. The huge dog ..... me yesterday. I was terrified.
    a. carried b. scared c. cried d. played

11. Care about means to ..... strongly about someone or something.
    a. deal b. eat c. feel d. hit

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Most of my friends studied ..... a local school.
    a. at b. in c. into d. onto

13. I saw my friend going ..... the river.
    a. at b. in c. down d. into

14. Yesterday, I ..... a terrible night because there was a fire on the factory next to my house.
    a. gave b. felt c. had d. took

15. Mr Alaa works at a ..... school for blind children.
a. general b. lonely c. private d. special

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
special	خاص - مميز	important - unusual	usual - ordinary	مألوف - معتاد
local	محلى	native - national	international	عالمى / دولى
die	يموت	pass away	live	يعيش - يحيا
brave	شجاع	fearless - daring	coward - afraid	جبان - خائف
clever	ماهر - ذكى	smart - intelligent	stupid	غبى
naughty	مشاغب - مزعج	bad - noisy	quiet	هادئ
successful	ناجح	lucky - winner	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
dangerous	خطير	serious - unsafe	safe	آمن
true	حقيقى - صحيح	correct - accurate	false-inaccurate	خطأ - غير دقيق

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
- ing	تكون صفة	amazing مدهش - مذهل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When something is ..... , it is unusual.
a. happy b. noisy c. sudden d. special
2. When something is serious, that means it is not ..... .
a. safe b. dangerous c. brave d. bad
3. The opposite of "live" is ..... .
a. die b. lie c. tie d. try
4. A/An ..... person isn't stupid.
a. interesting b. clever c. difficult d. slow

III Language

Remember لتذكر

1 The Past Simple Tense الماضي البسيط

شرحه في الوحدات السابقة.

2 The difference between the past simple and the present perfect

الاختلاف في الاستخدام بين زمن الماضي البسيط وزمن المضارع التام

Past Simple الماضي البسيط	Present Perfect المضارع التام
١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي :	١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي :
- Someone broke the window yesterday.	- Someone has broken the window.
٢. حدث تم في وقت وانتهي :	٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد :
- I received three emails last Monday.	- I have received three emails today.
٣. حدث بدأ وانتهي في الماضي :	٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر :
- I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.	- I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.
٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل :	٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل :
- Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels.	- Salah has scored 90 goals in the Premier League.
(نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)	(صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)
٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة :	٥. حدث أو حالة لازالت موجودة :
- I lived in Aswan in 2002.	- I have lived in Aswan since 2002.
(لم أعد أعيش هناك)	(وما زلت أعيش هناك)

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mum and dad ..... in that house since 2004.
   a. has lived b. have lived c. lived d. live

2. Tarek has ..... handball for ten years.
a. play b. plays c. played d. playing

3. Mai ..... England last week.
a. visits b. visited c. has visited d. visiting

4. When I was a baby, my parents ..... to Egypt.
a. moved b. moves c. moving d. are moving

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	b	يعبر زمن المضارع التام عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا فى الحاضر
2	c	يأتى الفعل بعد (has) فى التصريف الثالث لأن الجملة فى زمن المضارع التام
3	b	يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى (last week)
4	a	تعبر الجملة عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى (When I was a baby....)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB We moved to the city three years ..... .
a. ago b. yesterday c. last d. for

2. WB My parents ..... married in 2001.
a. gets b. get c. getting d. got

3. SB We haven't visited Syria since I ..... very young.
a. am b. was c. is d. are

4. SB Have you ever ..... to a new place ?
a. moved b. moves c. move d. moving

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Last week, she ..... to the park with her sister.
a. goes b. go c. went d. gone

6. They found their car near their house ..... .
a. yesterday b. tomorrow c. for d. since

7. Samy was born in Tanta and ..... there with his brother.
a. live b. lives c. lived d. living

8. She has written stories..... she was twelve.
a. for b. since c. ever d. never

9. What ..... Ahmed buy last week ?
   a. do b. does c. doing d. did
10. How long ..... you been in Aswan ? – For a year.
   a. has b. having c. have d. to have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB My name is Salma. I ..... (be) born in Syria.
2. WB Has Dalia ..... (be) deaf all of her life ?
3. SB Two years ago, I ..... (play) at a concert in the Cairo Opera House.
4. WB Magda ..... (visits) England last week.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. My sister ..... (go) shopping last month.
6. She ..... (have) phoned her father for an hour.
7. They have never ..... (eat) Italian food.
8. How did they ..... (wrote) the answers ?
9. She has talked to her friend ..... (since) two hours.
10. Has Hoda ..... (never) travelled to London ?

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 40 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢١٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. What do you learn about Tom from the passage ?
   - **He never thinks of other people.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What was Tom doing in the forest ?
   - .....

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the word "**her**" in the first paragraph refer to ?

- .....

Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى.

1. I have lived in a village all my life. ١. لقد عشت فى قرية طوال حياتى.
2. I have never been to another country. ٢. لم أذهب أبدًا لأى بلد آخر.
3. Last year, I visited Cairo with my uncle. ٣. ذهبت للقاهرة مع عمى العام الماضى.
4. Cairo was so big and busy. ٤. كانت القاهرة كبيرة ومزدحمة.
5. We went to lots of museums as I'm very interested in history. ٥. ذهبنا إلى متاحف كثيرة لأننى مهتم جدًا بمادة التاريخ.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

been – bought – for – since – born – Yesterday

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

1. He was ..... in Cairo in 1988.
2. She has ..... three dresses.
3. ....., she watched a nice film.
4. How long have you ..... in Alexandria ?
5. I haven't seen my aunt ..... I was a child.

C. Practise by yourself تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى.

- **Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :**

"An adventure story"

.....

.....

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Asking and answering questions about experiences :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الخبرات الحياتية :

Questions	Answers
1. A : Have you ever moved to another city ? هل انتقلت إلى مدينة أخرى ؟	B : Yes, I have. نعم، لقد قمت.
2. A : Where did you move ? إلى أين انتقلت ؟	B : I moved to New Cairo. انتقلت إلى القاهرة الجديدة.
3. A : When did you move ? متى انتقلت ؟	B : I moved three years ago. انتقلت منذ ثلاث سنوات.
4. A : Have you ever learned a different language ? هل قمت بتعلم لغة مختلفة من قبل ؟	B : Yes, I have. نعم، لقد قمت.
5. A : Which languages did you learn ? أى اللغات قمت بتعلمها ؟	B : I learned French. لقد قمت بتعلم اللغة الفرنسية.
6. A : Have you ever joined a sports club ? هل انضممت لنادى رياضى من قبل ؟	B : Yes, I have. نعم، لقد انضممت.
7. A : Which sports club did you join ? أى النوادى الرياضية التحقت بها ؟	B : I joined Al Ahly club. لقد انضممت / التحقت بالنادى الأهلى.
8. A : Have you ever played a musical instrument ? هل سبق لك أن عزفت على آله موسيقية ؟	B : Yes, I have. نعم، لقد عزفت.
9. A : Which musical instrument did you play ? ما هى الآلة الموسيقية التى عزفت عليها ؟	B : I played the piano. عزفت على آله البيانو.

Master your Term

اتقن منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Adel is talking to his cousin about an adventure that he had.

Adel : Hello, Said. I want to tell you about my adventure.

Said : Hello, Adel. (1) ..... ?

Adel : I chased a thief !

Said : A thief ! When did that happen ?

Adel : (2) ..... .

Said : Two hours ago ! (3) ..... ?

Adel : In front of the club.

Said : Who did he rob ?

Adel : (4) ..... .

Said : Poor woman ! Was he arrested ?

Adel : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To stop the animals from damaging your field, you should have a long ..... .
   a. leader b. fan c. fence d. ladder
2. The ..... man saved the woman from the robbers.
   a. brave b. weak c. ill d. bored
3. If you like music, try to play a musical ..... .
   a. accident b. machine c. tool d. instrument
4. She was happy when she ..... the last match.
   a. made b. won c. earned d. lost
5. Hala learnt ..... language to help her deaf daughter.
   a. foreign b. strange c. sign d. signal
6. He was lost, so I asked him to ..... me
   a. meet b. follow c. walk d. research

7. WB The pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping are called a/an ..... .
   a. raft b. canoe c. idea d. dream
8. Have you ..... tasted a lemon cake ?
   a. never b. ever c. since d. for
9. This is the first time I visit Luxor, I have ..... visited Luxor before.
   a. for b. ever c. since d. never
10. WB They have been married ..... fifteen years.
    a. since b. for c. ever d. never

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Soha ..... (live) in Mansoura since 2015.
2. My uncle ..... (have already) flown in a plane.
3. SB Have you ever ..... (drink) green tea ?
4. WB I have ..... (never win) a painting competition.

4 SB Complete the sentences with these words :

museums - fun - history - country - art

I have lived in a village in the south of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another (1) ....., but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins ! It was so big and busy but it was (2) ..... . We went to lots of (3) ..... because I am very interested in (4) ..... .

5 Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Omar who lives in Aswan about a day you spent at the Pyramids : محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your name is Adel and your email address is adelmunir@elmoasser.com.
Your friend's email address is omarhedar@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS

5 & 6

SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهي	discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف
gymnastics (n)	ألعاب رياضية - جمباز	dyslexia (n)	صعوبة القراءة
volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع - متطوع	results (n)	نتائج

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master)
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 99

windy (adj)	عاصف	normally (adv)	بطريقة طبيعية
organise (d) (v)	ينظم - يرتب	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب - يدرب
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
windsurf (ed) (v)	يتزلج على الماء (مستخدمًا المركب الشراعى)	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
		explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح
		alone (adv)	بمفرده

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 100

surprised (adj)	مندهش	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق / ينجز
prize (n)	جائزة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
art (n)	فن	brain (n)	مخ
artist (n)	فنان - رسام	charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
Manchester (n)	مانشستر (اسم مدينة فى انجلترا)	timeline (n)	خط زمنى - تسلسل زمنى
Greece (n)	دولة اليونان	Indian food (n)	الطعام الهندى
		swimming lessons (n)	دروس فى السباحة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

present المضارع	past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hurt يؤذى / يجرح	hurt	hurt
understand يفهم	understood	understood
write يكتب	wrote	written
spell يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
tell يخبر	told	told

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

dyslexia	means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell	عسر / صعوبة القراءة
discover	to find out some new information about something	يكتشف
result	this tells you how you have done in an exam	نتيجة

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• **on Lesson 5 SB page 41**

Nihal : Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done gymnastics for about ten years. I train on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my coach asked if I wanted to enter my first competition. I was really excited and I practised every day for a month. On the Thursday before the competition, I was practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg ! I was so sad and I cried and cried. I couldn't enter the competition.

I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year I will try to enter the competition again !

on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Tarek : My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life ? I've been to Jordan ! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition ! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done ?

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Karim has enjoyed windsurfing(1) for about two years. He usually goes with his older brother. A few months ago, he decided to windsurf(2) alone. He did not tell his brother this. It was windy, but that is good if you want to windsurf.

In the afternoon, the wind suddenly(3) became very strong. The wind took Karim far from the beach. He was very scared(4). Some people in a boat came to help Karim. After that, they took him back to the beach. Karim has not windsurfed alone since that time. Now, he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learnt an important lesson !

Check Vocabulary

(1) رياضة ركوب الأمواج (باستخدام قارب شراعي) | (2) يركب الأمواج (باستخدام قارب شراعي) | (3) فجأة | (4) خائف

• on Lesson 6 SB page 42

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was little[1], I always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then, my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered[2] that I had dyslexia[3]. This means it is difficult for my brain[4] to read and spell. After that, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good results ![5] I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist [6] one day. Now, I volunteer[7] at a charity[8] for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صغير السن	(2) يكتشف	(3) صعوبة القراءة	(4) المخ	(5) نتائج	(6) رسام / فنان	(7) يتطوع	(8) جمعية خيرية

• on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Events in Judy's life

1. I was born in Manchester in England.
2. When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt.
3. Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic.
4. When I started preparatory school, nobody knew that I was English !
5. After my thirteenth birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there.
6. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here !

• on Lesson 7 SB page 43

Different families have lived in our house for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we lived in Cairo. My parents have changed some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum wanted a new bathroom ! My grandmother has lived with us for four years. It is a happy, family home.

Remember تذكر

Dyslexia is a learning disability(1) which affects(2) reading and writing. Many smart(3) people have dyslexia. They can understand and see well, but they have problems with reading.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عائق (2) تؤثر على (3) ذكي

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 enjoy + (inf. + ing) / noun اسم — يتمتع بـ

ex.: - I enjoy windsurfing with my uncle.
- We enjoyed the concert of Oum Kulthoum at the citadel.

2 learn to + inf. — يتعلم أن

ex.: - I could learn to swim.

لاحظ : يمكن استخدام how بعد learn.

ex.: - I could learn how to swim.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do a sport	يمارس الرياضة	far from	بعيدًا عن
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	take him back to	يرجع إلى
tell ... about ...	يخبر ... عن ...	tell a story	يسرد / يحكي قصة
It's difficult for ... to ...		make notes about	يدون ملاحظات عن
	أنه من الصعب لـ ... أن ...	give a talk	يلقي خطبة / حديث
teach ... about ...	يُعلم ... عن ...	start swimming lessons	يبدأ دروس السباحة
achieve in his life	يحقق في حياته	play the piano	يعزف على البيانو

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. To ____ means to find out some new information about something.
   a. invent b. discover c. invest d. invite

2. You must study if you want to get excellent ..... .
   a. reasons b. causes c. results d. fences
3. If you have ....., then you have difficulty in reading and spelling.
   a. headache b. cold c. dyslexia d. flu
4. Dream Park is one of the biggest ..... parks in the Arab World.
   a. animal b. theme c. comic d. dangerous
5. We take a ..... lesson once a week to make our body strong.
   a. gymnastics b. science c. maths d. history

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB My grandfather has ..... many things in his life. I'm very proud of him.
   a. achieved b. lived c. taken d. played
7. WB Dareen's little brother is often ..... . He hides her clothes, so she can't find them !
   a. clever b. quiet c. naughty d. messy
8. WB It was windy, but that is good if you want to ..... .
   a. windsurf b. achieve c. spell d. listen
9. SB I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be a/an ..... one day.
   a. engineer b. artist c. doctor d. dentist

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. ..... is an exciting water sport.
    a. Windsurfing b. Basketball c. Skateboarding d. Tennis
11. Now, I ..... at a charity for children with dyslexia.
    a. volunteer b. discover c. like d. understand
12. I write the important events of my life on my ..... .
    a. result b. achievement c. timeline d. charity

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. We've enjoyed ..... music on our new piano.
    a. play b. plays c. to play d. playing
14. Ayman learned ..... to make his bed alone.
    a. what b. when c. how d. why

15. Tom ..... a problem in reading.
a. has b. plays c. cooks d. builds

16. My school is far ..... my house.
a. by b. from c. of d. to

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
difficult صعب - شاق	hard	easy سهل
teach يعلم - يُدرس	educate	learn يتعلم
huge ضخم	enormous - giant	tiny ضئيل الحجم
nearby قريب	near - close to	distant - remote - faraway بعيد - ناءٍ

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
- ing	تكون اسم من الفعل	swimming السباحة windsurfing ركوب الامواج
- y تكوّن صفة	تكون صفة	noisy مزعج

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The dinosaur was a huge animal. The antonym of "huge" is ..... .
a. enormous b. bad c. tiny d. easy

2. When you make a noise, you are ..... .
a. tiny b. dirty c. noisy d. ugly

3. "Educate" has the same meaning as "..... " .
a. teach b. learn c. give d. discuss

4. The suffix ..... turns the verb swim into a noun.
a. – ed b. – ing c. – ment d. – tion

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة Reading on lesson 5 WB page 99 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٣١ ثم قم بالتدرب
على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. What lesson do you think Karim has learned ?

   - **Not to windsurf alone again.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why was Karim scared ?

   - .....

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   - .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences هل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى.

"What has Munir achieved in his life?" **ماذا أنجز منير فى حياته؟**

1. When I was little, I always loved to draw and paint but I found reading and writing difficult.
   عندما كنت صغيراً . دائماً ما كنت احب ارسم وألون ولكن وجدت القراءة والكتابة صعبة.
2. My parents discovered that I had dyslexia.
   اكتشف والداى أنى اعانى من مرض صعوبة القراءة.
3. When I took my exams, I got really good results.
   عندما امتحنت حصلت على درجات جيدة.
4. I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day.
   حصلت على جائزة ثم قررت انى أريد ان اكون رسام فى يوم من الأيام.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

be – was – for – prize – art - good

1. I got really ..... results.
2. I ..... surprised and happy.
3. I got a ..... for my art.
4. I would like to ..... an artist one day.
5. Now, I teach ..... at a charity.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a short story

كتابة قصة قصيرة

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Model short story نموذج قصة قصيرة

Write a short story of about 110 words about an experience you will never forget.

An experience I will never forget

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was a little child of about seven years old, I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of five or six large dogs in front of me. I was so terrified that I decided to run away. As soon as I started to run, the dogs started to run after me. The dogs were much faster than I was. I started to cry and call for help. I fell down and all the dogs circled me. They were making such frightening noise that I felt it was the end of the world to me. All of a sudden, I heard the shouts of a group of farmers, who were running towards me with large sticks in their hands. Seeing the farmers with the sticks, the dogs escaped. I was rescued, but I learnt a lesson I will never forget. I must follow the advice of the elderly.

D. Writing a Biography :

كتابة سيرة ذاتية

لمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Model Biography نموذج للسيرة الشخصية

Write a biography of about 110 words about a person in your family or a public figure شخصية عامة

"My father"

If all fathers are great, I have the greatest father ever. He means everything to me. He is kind, loving and careful. I owe أدين لـ my success and happiness to my father.

My father was born on January 22nd, 1949. He was an ideal student. He graduated from the Faculty of Engineering, Cairo University in 1972. Once he graduated, he joined the Armed Forces and took part in the 1973 War. He was one of the engineers who worked on destroying Bar Lev Line. When the war ended, he went back to university to do his postgraduate studies دراسات عليا. He became a leading engineer in Egypt and started his own company that carried out several national and international projects. As a father to us, he was ideal. He cared a lot for our happiness, health and success in education and life. He taught us how to be positive members in our community. My father was a great success in both personal and work life. He also fought for his country. Thank you, father.

تدرب على كتابة سيرة ذاتية

E. Practise by yourself

- Write biography of about(110) words on :

"Your favourite person"

.....

.....

.....

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

"Asking and answering questions about important things you have achieved" : توجيه أسئلة عن الأشياء قد قمت بإنجازها :

A	B
1. What important things have you achieved in your life ? - ما الأشياء الهامة التى حققتها فى حياتك ؟	- I have learned to swim. - لقد تعلمت السباحة.
2. When did you learn that ? - متى تعلمت هذا ؟	- I learned to swim three years ago. - تعلمتها منذ ثلاثة أعوام.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is talking with his friend, Hamza about their favourite hobbies.

Ayman : How are you, Hamza ?

Hamza : Fine, thank you. What do you do in your spare time ?

Ayman : (1) ..... .

Hamza : Reading is really useful. (2) ..... ?

Ayman : I like reading scientific books. (3) ..... ?

Hamza : I usually do a sport.

Ayman : What kind of sport do you do ?

Hamza : (4) ..... .

Ayman : Karate is good, but dangerous. Why don't you play football ?

Hamza : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB Hatem ..... to help the elderly in the nearby charity home.
   a. damaged b. volunteered c. complete d. achieved
2. To keep fit, you should ..... a sport.
   a. own b. take c. make d. do
3. She ..... more than seven hours a day to prepare for the Olympics.
   a. feeds b. does c. trains d. makes
4. We haven't ..... the reason for his absence yet.
   a. discovered b. arrested c. visited d. explored
5. Waleed suffers from ..... . He finds difficulties in reading.
   a. disability b. dyslexia c. headache d. deafness

6. I'm proud of my father. He ..... many things in his life.
   a. joined b. offered c. given d. achieved

7. SB I volunteer at a/an ..... for other children with dyslexia.
   a. charity b. bank c. theme park d. theatre

8. They moved to Port Said ..... 2018.
   a. on b. since c. for d. in

9. Hadi has lived in Alexandria ..... 10 years.
   a. never b. ever c. for d. since

10. WB How long ..... in this house ?
   a. they have lived b. have lived they
   c. have they lived d. lived they have

3 SB Complete the sentences with these words :

paint - understand – easy – difficult – life

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my (1) ..... .
When I was little, I always loved to draw and (2) ..... , but I found reading and writing very (3) ..... . At school, I didn't always (4) ..... the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

4 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

مطلوب عمله في نهاية الكتاب

"Things that you have achieved"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity
التقييم الذاتى

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ..... في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ( ) experience
- ( ) snorkel
- ( ) get married
- ( ) pretend
- ( ) orphanage
- ( ) deaf
- ( ) organise
- ( ) scared of

2 Read and write sentences using the present perfect and the past simple tense :
اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع التام وزمن الماضى البسيط.

- ( ) They have ridden a horse.
- ( ) Last week, she visited Alexandria.
- ( ) Adel has never been to another country.
- ( ) They moved to a new flat two years ago.

3 Ask and answer questions about experiences :
أسأل واجيب أسئلة عن الخبرات

- ( ) **A :** Which people in your family have been to another country ?
- ( ) **B :** My cousin has been to England.
- ( ) **A :** How long have you lived in your house ?
- ( ) **B :** I've lived there since I was born.

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر
جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 4

Vocabulary

experience	خبرة / تجربة شخصية
marry	يتزوج
a period of	فترة من
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب عطس
deaf	أصم
sign language	لغة الإشارة
special school	مدرسة خاصة
local school	مدرسة محلية
relationship	علاقة
pretend	يتظاهر
trick	يخدع
theme park	مدينة ملاهى
report	تقرير
dyslexia	عسر/صعوبة فى القراءة
orphanage	دار الأيتام
adventure	مغامرة
windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج (تقارب شراعى)
fence	سياج - حاجز
paint	يدهن

Language

1. The present perfect tense.
زمن المضارع التام

Subject + have / has → + P.P.

ex.: They have('ve) watched TV.

ex.: He has('s) found his mobile.

"ever" من قبل (للسؤال عن تجارب سابقة)

ex.: Have you ever been to Rome ?

"never" ابدًا (للتعبير عن النفى)

ex.: I have never seen a snake.

"for"

لمدة (تعبر عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث)

ex.: Khalid has been married for 3 years.

"since" منذ (تعبر عن بداية الحدث)

ex.: She has lived in Cairo since 2010.

2. The past simple tense.
زمن الماضى البسيط

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex.: Last year, he visited Italy.

ex.: They bought a new house three years ago.

Speaking

Talking about experiences

التحدث عن الخبرات

A : How long have you been at this school ?

B : I have been at this school for seven years.

A : Have you ever joined a sports club ?

B : No, I have never joined a sports club.

A : What important things have you achieved in your life ?

B : I've worked as a volunteer for a charity in my town.

SB page 43 WB page 101

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A paragraph / An email on

- Your life / Your favourite hobby / Things you have achieved / An adventure story

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- What's your favourite hobby ?
- What places would you like to visit ?
- Mention two things you have achieved.
- How long do you practise your hobby ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

practise	organise	good things
achieve	do well	family life
behave	partner	events
take turn		adventure
work hard		

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

– I like	– To succeed you should ..... .
– It's important to	– I always help ..... .
– I play	– I text my ..... .

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) فى كل وحدة والتى تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج.

unit 4

1. Vocabulary

كلمات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

ride a bike	يركب دراجة	fence	سياج - حاجز
get married	يتزوج	snorkel	يتنفس تحت الماء بأنبوب تنفس
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	experience	خبرة - تجربة حياتية
deaf	أصم	normal	طبيعى
sign language	لغة الإشارة	scared of	خائف من
local school	مدرسة محلية	naughty	مشاغب - سيىء السلوك
relationship	علاقة	walk past	يمشى بجوار

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. Samy has played[1] tennis.
2. Has Lina ever[2] seen the film ?
3. They have never[3] visited the zoo.
4. Adel has had a car for[4] 3 years.
5. Sara has been at this house since[5] 2010.
6. Yesterday[6], Mohamed bought[7] a new mobile.

Check Language

(1) جملة فى زمن المضارع التام فى صيغة المثبات
(2) تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب السابقة فى زمن المضارع التام
(3) تستخدم مع الجملة المنفية
(4) التعبير عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث فى زمن المضارع التام
(5) تستخدم للتعبير عن بداية الحدث فى زمن المضارع التام
(6) كلمة دالة على زمن الماضى البسيط
(7) جملة مثبتة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Questions	Answers
1. Have your parents lived in the same house ?	- Yes, they have.
2. How long have you known your best friend ?	- Since 2010.
3. Has anyone in your family travelled by plane ?	- No, no one has travelled by plane.

General Exercises on unit 4

• Understand ○ Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nabil saw Amr running in the street.

Nabil : Hi, Amr. Why are you running ?

Amr : Hello, Nabil. (1) ..... .

Nabil : A hospital ! (2) ..... ?

Amr : My brother broke his leg.

Nabil : Oh, dear (3) ..... ?

Amr : He was playing football in the club and fell over. He couldn't stand on his leg.

Nabil : Who took him to hospital ?

Amr : (4) ..... .

Nabil : Can I come with you ?

Amr : (5) ..... . That's kind of you.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was little, I always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the work and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered that I had dyslexia. **This** means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell. After that, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good results ! I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Explain why the writer's family took him to have some tests. Mention two points.

.....

4 • Understand • Apply • Create

2. Infer the characteristics of a child who has dyslexia. Mention two.

.....

3. Do you think that students having dyslexia can get good results ? Why and how ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The passage is about ..... .
   a. the writer himself b. the write's family
   c. Cairo d. dyslexia
5. People with dyslexia need ..... .
   a. to have more money b. to do sport
   c. to have more help d. to learn art
6. The underlined word "**This**" refers to ..... .
   a. result b. exam c. school d. dyslexia

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Have you ever ..... Italian food ?
   a. learned b. eaten c. ridden d. flown
2. I have never slept ..... a tent before.
   a. in b. on c. off d. for
3. They have ..... to this house since 2010.
   a. enjoyed b. ridden c. flown d. moved
4. Some people's hobby is to ..... mountains, have you ever done it ?
   a. climb b. escape c. bring d. fly
5. A new ..... school for deaf children will be built in our neighbourhood.
   a. common b. general c. special d. social
6. While I was walking ..... the street, I met my friend.
   a. out b. down c. up d. off
7. S3 A/An ..... is something that happens in your life.
   a. decision b. report c. experience d. experiment

8. This is the most interesting story I have ..... read.
   a. never b. since c. for d. ever

9. Sohaila has ..... made a cake before.
   a. never b. ever c. for d. since

10. WB I've lived in the same house ..... I was born.
   a. ever b. never c. for d. since

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Have you ..... (ever ride) a horse ?
2. How long ..... (you have be) in Assiut ?
3. WB She ..... (stay) in Damietta since 2017.
4. WB I have never ..... (swim) in a lake.

5 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

bathroom - house - for - lived - moved

Different families have lived in our (1) ..... for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we (2) ..... in Cairo. My parents changed some of the house when we (3) ..... here. For example, my mum wanted a new (4) ..... !

6 Choose the correct word :

1. SB Mr Sabri has been at this school **since / for** 2020.
2. SB To **discover / join** is to become part of a club.

7 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"A happy event that happened to you recently"

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 4 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار قصير لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. Where is it best to snorkel in Egypt ?	a. [ ] since they were children.
2. Malak has been friends with Injy	b. [ ] slightly, or to a small degree.
3. My sister has learnt two new languages	c. [ ] married in 1999.
4. "A bit" means	d. [ ] since she left school.
5. My parents got	e. [ ] Sharm El-Sheikh.
	f. [ ] deaf all of her life ?

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tarek has **play** handball for ten years. (.....)
2. How long have you **knew** your best friend ? (.....)
3. Have you **never** visited Athens ? (.....)
4. We waited **to** the bus for two hours. (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

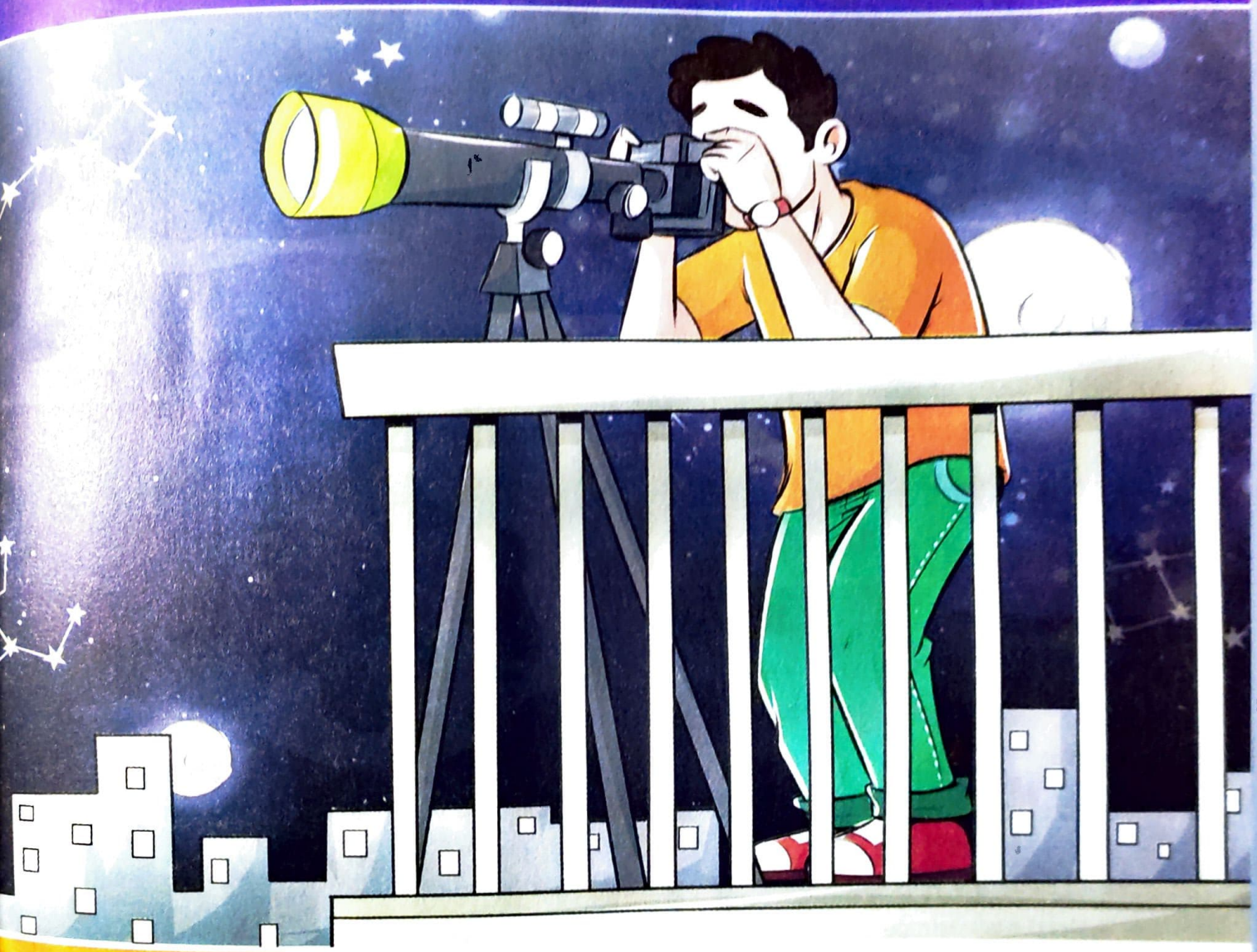
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My dad has passed ..... bad experiences in all of his life.
   a. lots b. much c. many d. little
2. "Ali became part of Liverpool team". This means he ..... Liverpool team.
   a. followed b. joined c. tricked d. hid
3. Please, let me ..... you some advice about how to learn a new language.
   a. gives b. to give c. give d. giving
4. Please, allow me ..... snorkelling in Hurghada.
   a. going b. goes c. going to d. to go
5. Which sentence is correct ? .....
   a. I live in Alexandria in 2000. b. I lived in Alexandria in 2000.
   c. I have lived in Alexandria in 2000. d. I will live in Alexandria in 2000.

UNIT 5

Young role models

SB pages 44;53 WB pages 102 ; 108



Objectives

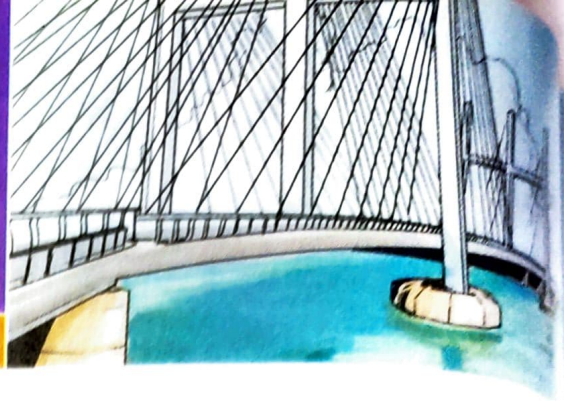
- **Reading :**
  A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player
- **Writing :**
  A description of someone's job; a paragraph about tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation about sharing good news
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news
- **Language :**
  The present perfect with *yet* and *already*
- **Life Skills :**
  Respect for diversity

لاتقان الوحدة
- للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47 WB pages 102 & 103



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

award (n)	جائزة - مكافأة	disabled people (n)	ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة / الهمم
speech (n)	حديث - خطاب	enter (ed) (v)	يدخل - ينضم
challenge(d) (v), (n)	يتحدى - تحدى	goals (n)	أهداف - طموحات

Jobs وظائف

business person	رجل أعمال	mathematician	عالم الرياضيات
campaigner	ناشط - مناضل	space scientist	عالم فضاء
computer programmer	مبرمج حاسوب	sports champion	بطل رياضي
engineer	مهندس	volunteer	متطوع
astronaut	رائد فضاء	manager	مدير

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

championship (n)	بطولة	university (n)	جامعة
company (n)	شركة	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز
space science (n)	علم الفضاء		

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

achievements (n)	انجازات	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
space engineering (n)	هندسة الفضاء	education (n)	التعليم
hyperloop (n)	الهايبرلوب (نظام نقل عالى السرعة)	equipment (n)	معدات
		blind (adj)	أعمى
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	design (ed) (v) , (n)	يصمم - تصميم
Cairo University	جامعة القاهرة	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get	يحصل	got	got
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
build	يبنى	built	built
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
mean	يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

award	a prize for an event or a competition	جائزة
mathematician	someone who works with maths	عالم رياضيات
scientist	someone who works with science	عالم
artist	someone who is good at art	فنان
musician	someone who is good at music	موسيقار

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	win	an award	يفوز بجائزة
give	a speech	يلقى خطاب		a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
finish	school	ينهى الدراسة	start	a company	ينشئ شركة
	university	ينهى دراسة الجامعة		a job	يبدأ العمل فى وظيفة
have	a competition	لديه مسابقة / منافسة	go to	university	يذهب إلى الجامعة

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

My cousin, Gamal, is a business person. When he finished university[1], he got a job with a big company[2] in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.

I think he's got a very important job. He's the manager[3] of a team of people and they have meetings[4] every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies in other countries. He has travelled[5] to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جامعة | (2) شركة | (3) مدير | (4) اجتماعات | (5) سافر

• on Lesson 2 SB page 46

Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space[1]. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut[2]. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering[3].

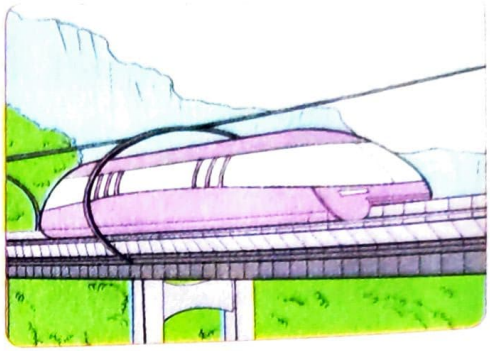
While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Students had to design a hyperloop - a new, very fast form of transport[4] that travels above the ground. Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from the university to join[5] her team.

Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East[6].

Check Vocabulary

(1) الفضاء | (2) رائدة فضاء | (3) هندسة الفضاء | (4) وسيلة نقل | (5) ينضم إلى | (6) الشرق الأوسط

They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award(7).



Three years later, Samar started her own company. Now she is a space engineer and a business person. She also gives speeches(8) to other young engineers to help them achieve(9) their goals(10).

Check Vocabulary

(7) جوائز | (8) خطابات / احاديث | (9) يحقق | (10) طموحات - أهداف

on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Binita who is from a village(1) in India, was five years old when she became blind. This was a big challenge(2) for her. She went to a school for blind children until she was eleven, when she joined a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about her problems. They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do !

Now she is a campaigner(3) for other people who are disabled. Her next challenge is to help everyone understand that being disabled does not mean you cannot achieve your goals.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية | (2) تحدى | (3) ناشط - مناضل

- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 47

Seleem : Hi Mazin! What are you reading ?

Mazin : It's an article about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He's a campaigner for people who are disabled.

Seleem : So is he disabled ?(1).

Mazin : Yes, he's been disabled all his life. He's done lots of amazing things, but he has had lots of challenges.

Seleem : What was his life like as a child ?

Mazin : Well, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Seleem : Did he go to school ?

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people.

Seleem : So what happened ?

Mazin : Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good education. They found a school for him and he was an excellent(2) student.

Seleem : Were there a lot of challenges for Magdy at school ?

Mazin : Yes, there were, but he never stopped trying when things were difficult(3). Before he left school, he won an award from Cambridge University for his achievements.

Seleem : That's amazing! What did he do when he finished school ? Did he get a job or go to university ?

Mazin : Well, after Magdy won the award(4), a lot of companies wanted to give him a job, but he decided to go to university.

Seleem : Of course, because education was very important to him.

Check Vocabulary

(1) من ذوى الهمم | (2) ممتاز | (3) صعب | (4) جائزة

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't the only important thing. Magdy has always believed in helping other people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for different charities.

Seleem : And does he still help people now ?

Mazin : Yes, he does. He works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs. He also gives speeches about how everyone can achieve their goals.

Videoscript

Have you ever looked at the sky at night ? You have probably seen the moon, planets and stars in space.

People have already visited space many times. A Russian astronaut, Yuri Gagarin, went in 1961. And in 1969, an American astronaut called Neil Armstrong was the first man on the moon.

Today, there are astronauts on a satellite called the International Space Station. This flies around our planet every 90 minutes. The astronauts on the space station do scientific experiments to study space. They usually stay on the space station for about six months. And they even do exercises for two hours every day to keep fit.

Space has interested Egyptians for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians were the first civilization to study the stars and the planets, and they made some important discoveries.

They first discovered the equinox. This happens in March and September every year and it is when the position of the sun in the sky means that the day and the night are the same length.

We are still making important discoveries today. At the Egyptian Space Agency in Cairo, engineers from the agency and students from Cairo University have already built satellites. They now want to send an Egyptian astronaut to explore space. Nobody from Egypt has visited space yet, but they will in the future.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 role / rule

* role (n) دور
ex.:- Sport plays a great role to keep us healthy.

* rule (v) (ed) يحكم
ex.:- Mohammed Ali ruled Egypt long ago.

2 model - medal

* model (n) نموذج
ex.:- This is not a real plane. It's a model.

لاحظ : role model تستخدم بمعنى (مثل أعلى) أو نموذج يحتذى به.

ex.:- You should be a role model to your community.

* medal (n) ميدالية
ex.:- Basem got the first gold medal in his life in 2017.

3 disable - disabled - the disabled

* disable (v) يسبب العجز أو الإعاقة - تقوم بتعطيل
ex.:- He was disabled in a car accident.
- The robbers disabled the alarm to rob the bank.

* disabled (adj) صفة بمعنى من ذوى الهمم / من ذوى الإعاقة
ex.:- I met a disabled boy in a wheelchair.

* the disabled (n) = disabled people (اسم جمع) الاشخاص ذوى الإعاقة / ذوى الهمم
عند وضع the أمام الصفة فإنها تشير إلى اسم جمع.

ex.:- We should help the disabled.

لاحظ : unable (غير قادر) وتصف عدم القدرة على عمل شيء ولا تعنى الإعاقة.

ex.:- Some children are unable to read well.

4 equipment (n) (معدات) هذه الكلمة لا تعد (لا يضاف لها "s" الجمع)

ex.:- The equipment in this studio is very expensive.

(a piece of / pieces of) ولكن يمكن أن نجعلها مفرد وجمع بإضافة

ex.:- The microwave is a useful piece of equipment in the kitchen.
- We need new pieces of equipment for our school lab.

5 a reward - an award

* a reward (مكافأة (عمل جيد قام به شخص))

ex.:- My father gave me a reward for my success.

* an award (جائزة رسمية (للفوز فى مسابقة مثلًا))

ex.:- Dr Ahmed Zewail got many awards for his inventions and discoveries.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get paid	يحصل على أجر (مادى)	teams of students	فرق من الطلاب
be ... for	ضار لـ	work hard on ...	يعمل باجتهاد فى
... with computer	يتعامل مع الحاسب الآلى	receive the award	يستلم الجائزة
... to	يسافر إلى	work for ...	يعمل لدى / لصالح ...
around the world	حول العالم	at home	فى المنزل
for 3 years now	لمدة ٣ سنوات حتى الآن	with top marks	بدرجات عالية
work out	يستنتج - يحل مسائل حسابية	take part in	يشارك فى
on a recent day	فى يوم مؤخرًا	pass exams	يجتاز / ينجح فى الإمتحانات

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. You can ..... the museum from different places, but I prefer the main gate.
   a. achieve b. become c. enter d. mean
2. The doctors won a lot of ..... for helping so many people in the health emergency.
   a. words b. awards c. challenges d. villages
3. He is a ..... for people who are disabled now.
   a. business person b. space scientist
   c. campaigner d. sports champion

4. She was a famous ..... . She used very big numbers to work things out in her job.
   a. campaigner b. volunteer
   c. sports champion d. mathematician
5. Ahmed is a ..... . He works with hundreds of computers !
   a. business person b. campaigner
   c. computer programmer d. mathematician

SB and WB Exercises

أسئلة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB Samar helps young engineers to ..... their goals.
   a. pass b. achieve c. design d. enter
7. WB A ..... is someone who works with science.
   a. mathematician b. volunteer c. scientist d. musician
8. WB Nahla's ..... is to pass all her exams with top marks.
   a. goal b. award c. speech d. space
9. WB It was a real ..... to climb that mountain, but we succeeded !
   a. award b. challenge c. campaign d. village

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. The Egyptian champion Mohamed Ali Rashwan was in the final of the World Judo ..... in 1984.
    a. Bank b. Achievement c. Championship d. Party
11. A ..... is a new, very fast form of transport that travels on the ground.
    a. ship b. boat c. bicycle d. hyperloop
12. The ..... don't get paid for their work, but they like to help people.
    a. mathematicians b. astronauts
    c. volunteers d. artists

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. The rich ..... people who have much money.
    a. has b. are c. have d. is
14. WB The students took turns to ..... a speech. Mine was about playing chess !
    a. drive b. give c. take d. have
15. Leen is working hard ..... her project.
    a. on b. in c. over d. above
16. Drugs المخدرات are bad ..... health.
    a. with b. to c. at d. for

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
start	بدأ	begin	finish	ينهي - ينتهي
fast	سريع	quick	slow	بطيء
pass	يجتاز	succeed in	fail	يفشل

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
– ian	لتكوين اسم الفاعل من الاسم	musician	موسيقار
		mathematician	عالم رياضيات
– ist	لتكوين اسم الفاعل من الاسم	artist	فنان - رسام
		scientist	عالم
– er	لتكوين اسم الفاعل من الاسم أو الفعل	campaigner	ناشط - مناضل
		engineer	مهندس
		teacher	مدرس
		programmer	مبرمج
dis –	تعطي عكس الصفة	disabled	من ذوي الإعاقة
		disappointed	محبط

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To succeed in your exams means you ..... them.
   a. taste b. test c. pass d. fail
2. Noha works as a campaigner since she left school. The word "campaigner" here is a/an ..... .
   a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
3. We can add the suffix ..... to make the noun of the verb "teach".
   a. – est b. – ist c. – er d. – ly
4. We use the prefix (dis –) to give the ..... of the adjective "appointed".
   a. synonym b. antonym c. verb d. adverb
5. "Quick" has the same meaning as ..... .
   a. slow b. fast c. high d. low

III Language

Remember تذكر

1 The Present Perfect Tense : زمن المضارع التام:

قد سبق شرح زمن المضارع التام فى الوحدة السابقة.

ex. - Omar has already eaten a big pizza.
- He has never been to England.
- She has studied English since 2002.
- Salah has scored 13 goals this year.
- Have you ever driven a truck ?
- Where has Yasser been this week ?

2 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضى البسيط:

قد سبق شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة الثانية.

ex. - She was ill yesterday.
- He went to the cinema last month.
- They didn't build the house last year.
- Did you go swimming last week ?
- Where did you go yesterday ?

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar ..... his exams last week.
   a. passes b. pass c. passing d. passed
2. Mona ..... as a volunteer since she left school.
   a. work b. works c. has worked d. working
3. Yasser ..... a smartphone five years ago.
   a. hasn't had b. didn't have c. doesn't have d. hasn't have
4. I have just ..... a postcard to my pen-friend.
   a. sent b. send c. sending d. sends
5. Where has Salma ..... this week ?
   a. were b. be c. to be d. been

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d	الفعل الجملة تعبر عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى وهناك كلمة دالة على زمن الماضى البسيط (last week)
2	c	الفعل الجملة تعبر عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى واستمر حتى وقت الكلام وهناك كلمة (since) تدل على زمن المضارع التام
3	b	الفعل الجملة تعبر عن النفى فى زمن الماضى البسيط وهناك كلمة دالة على زمن الماضى البسيط (ago)
4	a	الفعل (have) يتبعها التصريف الثالث للفعل فى زمن المضارع التام.
5	d	الفعل الجملة تعبر عن زمن المضارع التام فى صيغة الاستفهام ويكون الفعل فى التصريف الثالث

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

1. SB Samar wanted to be an astronaut when she ..... young.
   a. was b. is c. were d. being
2. WB Last year, I ..... to meetings around the world.
   a. travel b. travels c. travelled d. travelling
3. SB Magdy has ..... a lot of challenges in his life.
   a. have b. had c. has d. having
4. WB Since I started my job, I ..... with hundreds of computers !
   a. have worked b. work c. works d. worked
5. SB What ..... always been important to Magdy ?
   a. will have b. has c. to have d. having

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

6. ..... Adel come on time this morning ?
   a. Has b. Is c. Was d. Do
7. I have ..... my bike.
   a. mend b. mended c. mends d. mending
8. My mother ..... gone to the market.
   a. is b. have c. has d. didn't
9. Has she cooked lunch ? - Yes, she .....
   a. have b. did c. was d. has

10. The teacher ..... the class an hour ago.
a. entered b. enters c. has entered d. enter

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB They worked hard on their design and they ..... (win) the competition.
2. SB My mum ..... (want) to be a sports champion when she was young.
3. SB What ..... (have) Samar achieved ?
4. WB Last year, we ..... (build) a very long bridge in China.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Has life ..... (be) easy for Alaa ?
6. She has ..... (paints) the fence by herself.
7. Someone ..... (have) sent me this email.
8. How long ..... (you have) stayed in Alexandria ?
9. Tamer and Nour ..... (has) been to the park.
10. The children have ..... (wrote) a beautiful story.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٥٢ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think Samar's team won the competition ?
- Because they worked hard.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. What has Samar Abdelfattah been interested in ?
- .....

- Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the pronoun "They" in the third paragraph refer to ?
- .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

1. My cousin Gamal is a business person.
2. He got a job with a big company in Cairo.
3. He's worked there for three years.
4. He's travelled to lots of interesting places.
5. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil.

١ ابن عمى جمال هو رجل اعمال
٢ حصل على وظيفة لدى شركة كبيرة فى القاهرة
٣ لقد عمل هناك لمدة ثلاث سنوات
٤ لقد سافر الى العديد من الماكن الشيقة
٥ ذهب الى نيجيريا والبرازيل العام الماضى

B. Building sentences

1. Read and complete :

yesterday - be - long - ago - manager - passed

1. Samy ..... his exams last week.
2. Adel is the ..... of the company.
3. She wanted to ..... a sports champion.
4. How ..... has she been in Cairo ?
5. He won a prize three years ..... .

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Someone in your family with an interesting job"

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Asking and answering questions about jobs :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الوظائف :

Questions	Answers
1. Which university did you study at ? اى جامعة كنت تدرس بها ؟	- I studied at ..... . لقد درست فى
2. What is your job ? ما هى وظيفتك ؟	- I'm ..... . انا
3. Why are you interested in it ? لماذا انت مهتم بهذه الوظيفة ؟	- Because I like ..... لانى احب
4. When did you start it ? متى بدأت العمل فى هذه الوظيفة ؟	- I started in ..... . انا بدأت فى
5. How long have you had the job ? كم المدة التى قضيتها فى وظيفتك ؟	- I have ..... . لقد قضيت

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Laila is asking Maha about her role model.

Laila : Can I ask you a question ?

Maha : (1) ..... .

Laila : (2) ..... ?

Maha : My role model is my mother.

Laila : Great ! (3) ..... ?

Maha : After my father's death, she suffered a lot for me.

Laila : How ? Can you explain more ?

Maha : (4) ..... .

Laila : She is a great woman. How do you feel towards her ?

Maha : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB Schools should have ..... for disabled people.
   a. equipment b. kitchens c. factories d. birds
2. Tourists come to Egypt from all ..... the world.
   a. round b. a round c. around d. roundly
3. They train hard because they ..... a competition next month.
   a. lend b. send c. make d. have
4. My uncle is happy because his son has ..... an award.
   a. received b. made c. done d. given
5. My brother is working hard ..... his project.
   a. on b. about c. by d. from
6. My ..... is to come first and join a secondary school.
   a. lesson b. goal c. company d. reason

7. We all should know that being disabled doesn't mean you cannot ..... your goals.
a. achieve b. enter c. forget d. deceive

8. I haven't done my homework ..... .
a. never b. since c. ever d. yet

9. She ..... cleaned the car.
a. can b. is c. will d. has

10. Mostafa has ..... been to Kuwait before.
a. never b. yet c. ever d. ago

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. They ..... (wash) the carpets last Friday.
2. He ..... (not make) tea yet.
3. Amir ..... (write) a report yesterday.
4. She ..... (not travel) to another country since she was a baby.

4 Complete the sentences with these words :

concerts - started - university - meetings - manager

Gamal got his job after he finished (1) ..... He (2) ..... working for the company ten years ago . He has been the (3) ..... of the company since 2010. Gamal has (4) ..... with people from different companies every day.

5 SB Write a short text of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your role model"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 48 : 50 WB pages 104 & 105

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية (للشخص)	coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا (كوفيد - ١٩)
creative (adj)	مبدع - مبتكر	pandemic (n)	جائحة - وباء
create (d) (v)	ينشئ - يبتكر	spectators (n)	مشاهدين - متفرجين
tournament (n)	دوري - مسابقة (رياضية)	organisers (n)	المنظمون
bubble (n)	فقاعة (طبية)	app (n)	تطبيق / برنامج على التليفون المحمول أو الكمبيوتر
medical team (n)	الفريق الطبي	staff (n)	طاقم - هيئة العاملين
contest (n)	مسابقة - منافسة	champions (n)	أبطال (رياضيون)
competitors (n)	متنافسين		
championship (n)	بطولة		

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

poems (n)	قصائد	dream (n)	حلم
particular (adj)	معين / خاص	tour (n)	جولة
software (n)	برنامج حاسوبى	Khan El-Khalili (n)	خان الخليلى (سوق تجارى)

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية	final (n)	نهائى
health centre (n)	مركز طبى	incredible (adj)	مذهل / لا يصدق
achievement (n)	إنجاز	Africa Cup of Nations (n)	كأس الأمم الأفريقية
medal (n)	ميدالية	success (n)	النجاح
test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر - يفحص / إختبار	viewers (n)	مشاهدى (التلفاز)

Countries and Cities

Ivory Coast	دولة ساحل العاج	Egypt	مصر
Japan	دولة اليابان	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
Abidjan	مدينة أبيدجان (تقع في دولة ساحل العاج)		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الفعل غير المنتظم

Present الحاضر	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
learn يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
hold يمسك - يعقد	held	held

تنويه هذه التصريفات مجموعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التصريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

app	software you can use on your computer or phone	تطبيق
competition	an event in which people try to be the best at something	مسابقة - منافسة
create	to make something new	يبتكر - ينشئ
creative	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something	مبدع - مبتكر

- تستخدم غالبًا صيغًا قصيرة لبعض الكلمات مثل :

Word الكلمة		Short form الصيغة القصيرة
application	تطبيق	= app
mathematics	علم الرياضيات	= maths
television	تليفزيون	= TV
photographs	صور فوتوغرافية	= photos
aeroplane	طائرة	= plane

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

take	a boat	يستقل القارب	have	a tour	يقوم بجولة
	a bus	يستقل الأتوبيس		lunch	يتناول وجبة الغداء

win a prize for a poem يفوز بجائزة لقصيدة
win a medal يفوز بميدالية
win a cup يفوز بكأس

create an app
go home

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem[1] she wrote ! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts[2] already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing!

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream[3] is to create an app to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit ! Maybe we can go travelling[4] together.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قصيدة | (2) حفلات موسيقية | (3) حلم | (4) يسافر

• on Lesson 4 SB page 50

31st January 2021

IN THE BUBBLE

The medical team

Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball tournament[1] ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the quarter finals (the last eight). There were over 600 competitors[2] from 32 countries.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بطولة - دورة | (2) متنافس

They have played over 100 games and scored more than 5,500 goals ! All of this was during the coronavirus pandemic[3]. Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest[4] in Egypt has been fantastic !

The medical team[5] have worked for months to make the tournament safe. Firstly, there haven't been any spectators[6]. Also, the players and staff[7] have had tests for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this "bubble[8]". These hotels all have a health centre and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners have worked day and night to clean the stadiums and the hotels and make them safe.

The medical team were from the Ministry of Health[9] and the Ministry of Youth and Sports[10]. They have done such an incredible[11] job that the organisers[12] of the 2021 Olympics[13] in Japan have asked them for their advice[14]. What an amazing achievement[15] !

Check Vocabulary

(3) جائحة / وباء فيروس كورونا	(4) منافسة - مسابقة	(5) فريق طبى	(6) مشاهدين
(7) طاقم	(8) فقاعة	(9) وزارة الصحة	(10) وزارة الشباب والرياضة
(11) رائع - لا يصدق	(12) المنظمين	(13) دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية	(14) نصيحة
			(15) إنجاز

on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Egypt has already[1] won the Africa Cup of Nations[2] seven times. That is **a fantastic (an incredible)** achievement! In 2023, the **contest (tournament)** will be in Ivory Coast[3], who have already been **winners (champions)** twice before.

The **players (competitors)** will be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium[4] in Abjidjan[5], holds 60,000 **people (spectators)**. The organisers[6] are sure that it will be a great success[7].

Check Vocabulary

(1) بالفعل	(2) كأس الأمم الأفريقية	(3) دولة ساحل العاج	(4) استاد
(5) أبيدجان (أكبر مدينة فى ساحل العاج)		(6) المنظمين	(7) النجاح

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Interviewer : So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and you have already created[1] an app, is that right ?

Haytham : Yes! I created an app last year.

Interviewer : What does your app do ?

Haytham : It's an app to help people organise[2] their schoolwork[3] and homework. I needed all my work and timetables to be in the same place so I made it to help me! Then my friends liked it too, so I decided to let other people use it, too!

Interviewer : That sounds great! When can we use it ?

Haytham : People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

Interviewer : Have you created any other apps yet ?

Haytham : No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas!

Interviewer : Have you got a job at a big technology company[4] yet ?

Haytham : No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to university.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يبتكر | (2) تنظيم | (3) واجبات مدرسية | (4) شركة التكنولوجيا

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 audience - viewers - spectators - onlookers

* **audience (n)** جمهور (المسرح أو السينما أو أى عرض)

ex.: - The music show was boring, so the audience were not content.

* **viewers (n)** متابعى / مشاهدى (التليفزيون)

ex.: - 60 % of the channel viewers prefer romantic films.

* spectators (n) جماهير (الملاعب مثل كرة القدم)

ex.: - Today, there are 60.000 spectators in the stadium.

* onlookers (n) مشاهدى أو متابعى حدث أو واقعة

ex.: - There were many onlookers at the scene of the accident.

2 volunteer (v) , (n)

* volunteer (ed) (v) يتطوع

ex.: - He's volunteered to help the disabled.

* volunteer (n) متطوع

ex.: - He works as a volunteer in a charity.

3 team (n)

* team (n) فريق (يمكن أن يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)

تعامل (كمفرد) عندما نقصد الفريق ، وتعامل (كجمع) عندما نقصد اللاعبين.

ex.: - My football team is Al-Ahli. (مفرد عندما تعبر عن الفريق ككل)

ex.: - The team are happy. They've won the cup.

(جمع عندما تعبر عن كل أفراد الفريق)

4 staff - crew

* staff هيئة العاملين (بشركة - مدرسة - منظمة ...) ودائما جمع

ex.: - The company staff are working hard to achieve more and more success.

* crew طاقم العاملين (على متن الطائرة - السفينة) وهى كلمة مفرد

ex.: - The crew on the ship is hardworking.

5 pandemic جائحة (انتشار وتفشى مرض فى جميع انحاء البلاد والقارات)

ex.: - COVID-19 became a pandemic when it spread all over the world.

6 Olympic - Olympics

* Olympic (adj) خاص بالألعاب الأولمبية

ex.: - We need to care more about our Olympic athletes.

* Olympics (n) دورة الألعاب الأولمبية (الأوليمبياد)

ex.: - Tokyo Olympics were amazing.

7 biography - autobiography

* biography (سيرة ذاتية لشخص (يكتبها شخص عن اخر)

ex.:- The book gives us biographies of all the presidents.

* autobiography (سيرة ذاتية لشخص (يكتبها الشخص عن نفسه)

ex.:- I wrote a famous autobiography about my early life.

8 competition - contest - tournament - championship

* competition (n) منافسة بين (أشخاص ، منظمات ، مؤسسات ، شركات ...) على شيء

ex.:- There is a big competition between the two persons to get the job.

* contest (n) مسابقة (غنائية ، جمالية ... الخ - نزاع على شيء)

ex.:- I always watch international beauty contests on TV.

* tournament (n) مسابقة أو دورى رياضى (بين مجموعة من اللاعبين أو الفرق بنظام خروج المغلوب)

ex.:- We hold a football tournament every year in our area.

* championship (n) بطولة (مسابقة فى رياضة معينة للوصول لاحسن لاعب أو فريق)

ex.:- The Football World Cup is the most popular championship for all countries.

* champion (n) بطل (رياضى)

ex.:- Chelsea sporting club won the European Champions League.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

play in a concert	يعزف فى فرقة موسيقية	ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة
play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار	over 600 competitors	أكثر من ٦٠٠ متسابق
feel nervous	يشعر بالتوتر	from 32 countries	من ٣٢ دولة
go travelling together	نسافر سويًا	score goals	يحرز أهداف
in the contest	فى المسابقة	work for months	يعمل لشهور
at the stadium	فى الاستاد	do an incredible job	يقوم بعمل لا يصدق
test the players for coronavirus	يختبر اللاعبين للكشف عن اصابات بفيروس كورونا	on TV	فى التلفزيون
		on computer	على جهاز الحاسب

by night ليلًا	on the Nile فى النيل
stay in the same hotel يمكث فى نفس الفندق	learn a musical instrument يتعلم على آلة موسيقية
travel to another country يسافر إلى دولة أخرى	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We would like to thank all of the ..... for working hard in the office today.
   a. finals b. awards c. staff d. crew
2. There were nearly 90,000 ..... in the stadium, and they all enjoyed the match.
   a. medals b. spectators c. players d. competitors
3. Our dream is to ..... many apps to help children learn.
   a. write b. play c. create d. win
4. A/An ..... is the life story of a person written by someone else.
   a. biography b. poem c. tale d. autobiography
5. We need ..... thinking to make that new app.
   a. impossible b. creative c. amazed d. small

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB Our school has a chess ..... every year.
   a. pandemic b. success c. app d. tournament
7. WB There are only eight teams left, so this is the ..... -finals.
   a. half b. quarter c. past d. third
8. WB A/An ..... is something you can use on your computer or phone.
   a. competition b. app c. tournament d. biography
9. SB There were over 600 ..... from 32 countries in the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship.
   a. spectators b. competitors c. bubbles d. articles

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. She won a gold ..... in the 100 metres.
    a. metal b. medal c. model d. bubble

11. I am proud of my parents' ..... in the life.
a. spectators b. organisers c. instruments d. achievements

12. The " ..... " are a set of international sports competitions that happen once every four years.
a. Olympics b. Staff c. Championship d. Tournaments

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Magdi Yacoub works ..... a surgeon.
a. for b. with c. as d. like

14. They went on a voyage ..... the Nile.
a. in b. on c. down d. out

15. Policemen work ..... night to protect us.
a. in b. on c. by d. of

16. Medical tests are done on players ..... coronavirus.
a. for b. at c. from d. by

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
contest مسابقة / نزاع	competition	
competitors متنافسين	players / opponents	helpers مساعدين
staff طاقم / هيئة العاملين	workers	–
big كبير (الحجم)	large	small صغير (الحجم)
champions أبطال	winners	losers خاسرين
clean ينظف	wash	make dirty يجعله متسخا
incredible رائع - لا يصدق	fantastic - really good	terrible فظيع - رهيب
nobody لا أحد	no one	everyone كل شخص

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
in –	تعطى عكس المعنى (المضاد)	incredible رائع
im –	تعطى عكس الصفة	impossible مستحيل

- ive	تحول من فعل إلى صفة	creative	مبدع - مبتكر
- or	تكون الاسم من الفعل	competitor spectator	منافس مشاهد / متفرج
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	organiser winner loser	منظم فائز خاسر

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Another word for the word "champions" is " ..... ".
   a. losers b. defenders c. attackers d. winners
2. The adjective from the verb "create" is ..... .
   a. creates b. creative c. creation d. creator
3. The word " ..... " has the same meaning as the word "workers"
   a. contest b. competitor c. champion d. staff
4. To give the opposite of the word "possible", we add the prefix ..... .
   a. in – b. un – c. dis – d. im –

III Language

The Present Perfect Tense with (yet & already)

زمن المضارع التام مع (yet & already)

1 "yet" means "at any time until now".

١. تستخدم "yet" بمعنى "حتى الآن"

Formation التكوين

a) We use it at the end of negative sentences :

أ) تستخدم فى نهاية الجمل المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + haven't / hasn't → + p.p. + ... yet.

ex.:- She hasn't been to another country yet.

b) We use it at the end of Yes/ No questions :

ب) تستخدم فى نهاية الأسئلة بـ"هل" :

Have / Has + subject الفاعل → + P.P. + ... yet ?

ex.: - Has she learned a musical instrument yet ?

2 "already" means "before now" or before a particular time.

تستخدم "already" بمعنى "بالفعل / مسبقًا"

Formation التكوين

a) We use it at the end of the sentence. تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة.

Subject الفاعل + have / has → + P.P. + تكملة الجملة + already.

ex.: - She's played in two concerts already.

b) We use it before the main verb :

ب) تستخدم قبل الفعل الأساسى أى تأتى بين (have / has) والـ (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل.

Subject الفاعل + have / has → + already + P.P. ..... .

ex.: - She has already written a book of stories.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Youssef has ..... finished his homework.
   a. ever b. already c. yet d. ago
2. Sama ..... tidied her room yet.
   a. hasn't b. has c. have d. haven't
3. Hamza has already ..... Egypt and started his journey.
   a. leave b. left c. leaves d. leaving

4. I started work an hour ago, but I haven't finished ..... .
   a. never b. yet c. ever d. ago

5. Huda has done housework ..... .
   a. ago b. never c. yet d. already

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	b	لأن already تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة المثبتة وبعد (have / has).
2	a	لأن فى الجملة yet وتأتى فى الجملة المنفية فى زمن المضارع التام وفاعل الجملة اسم مفرد.
3	b	لأن الجملة فى زمن المضارع التام الذى يتكون من (has + p.p.).
4	b	لأن yet تأتى فى الجملة المنفية فى زمن المضارع التام.
5	d	لأن already تأتى أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

1. SB He's already ..... three languages.
   a. learn b. learned c. learns d. learning

2. WB They haven't visited the Pyramids ..... .
   a. yet b. ever c. never d. already

3. SB Have you ..... to the new restaurant yet ?
   a. be b. been c. being d. are

4. WB I have done my homework ..... .
   a. ever b. for c. already d. since

5. SB We've already ..... our lunch.
   a. ate b. eats c. eating d. eaten

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Have you finished your homework ..... ?
   a. ago b. yet c. ever d. never

7. **A :** Have you finished your homework ?
   B : Yes, I have finished it ..... .
   a. yet b. just c. already d. never

8. I haven't ..... breakfast yet.
a. have b. has c. having d. had

9. I'm not going to watch the film. I have seen it .....
a. already b. yet c. never d. ever

10. Youssef ..... three Arabic lessons already.
a. has b. has had c. have had d. is having

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Haytham has created an app ..... (yet).
2. WB I have already ..... (came) to school.
3. SB I haven't finished my homework ..... (already).
4. WB They have ..... (yet) seen Cairo by night.

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Nada has ..... (won already) a gold medal.
6. I haven't done my project ..... (then).
7. ..... (Have) Amal met her new teacher yet ?
8. ..... (Has) they visited the Egyptian Museum yet ?
9. She hasn't ..... (have) her breakfast yet.

Self Assessment Activity

قيم نفسك.

- ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- في حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق (Master Your Term) Part 2

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٦٨ و ٢٦٩ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer **the following questions :**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

1. How many competitors were there in the handball tournament in Egypt ?

- There **were over 600 competitors from 32 countries.**

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. Why do you think the contest in Egypt has been fantastic ?

- .....

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

1. Aya has always loved writing stories and poems.
١ آية كانت دائما تحب كتابة القصص والقصائد الشعرية.
2. When she was six, she wrote a book of stories.
٢ عندما كانت فى السادسة من عمرها كتبت كتاب قصص.
3. She won a prize for a poem she wrote.
٣ فازت بجائزة لقصيدة كتبتها
4. She really likes to be creative.
٤ إنها حقا تريد أن تكون مبدعة
5. Her dream is to create an app to help children learn.
٥ حلمها هو أن تبتكر تطبيق ليساعد فى تعليم الأطفال

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

found - yet - has - already - since - fantastic

1. She hasn't finished her book ..... .
2. They have ..... won the match.
3. He ..... already bought a new car.
4. Aya wrote a ..... poem.
5. The boys haven't ..... their lost bags.

تدرب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Things you have done in your life"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

محادثة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about sports tournaments :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن المسابقات الرياضية :

Questions	Answers
1. What was the last sports tournament you watched in a stadium or on TV ? ١. ماذا كانت أحدث مسابقة أو مناسبة رياضية قمت بمشاهدتها فى الإستاد أو على التلفاز ؟	- I watched the Olympic Games in Tokyo on TV. - لقد قمت بمشاهدة دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية فى طوكيو على التلفاز.
2. Who won ? ٢. من فاز ؟	- The USA won 39 gold medals in these Olympic Games. - لقد فازت الولايات المتحدة بعدد ٣٩ ميدالية ذهبية فى هذه الدورة.
3. Did you enjoy it ? Why ? ٣. هل استمتعت بها ؟	- Yes, it was exciting when there were competitors from Egypt. - نعم. لقد كانت مثيرة عندما كان هناك متنافسين من مصر.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf and Mustafa are talking about their jobs in the future.

Ashraf : Hello, Mustafa. How are you ?

Mustafa : Hello, Ashraf. Fine, thanks.

Ashraf : What would you like to be in the future ?

Mustafa : (1) ..... .

Ashraf : (2) ..... ?

Mustafa : Because I like building new houses and roads.

Ashraf : (3) ..... ?

Mustafa : I need to join the Faculty of Engineering. What about you ?

Ashraf : (4) ..... .

Mustafa : A chemist صيدلى is a useful job. I wish you good luck.

Ashraf : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ali works ..... a volunteer in a charity in his free time. He is a helpful man.
   a. for b. as c. of d. on
2. The festival was great. Really, you are excellent ..... .
   a. beggars b. organisers c. robbers d. engineers
3. He is an intelligent person. He ..... a good app.
   a. threw b. stole c. invited d. created
4. WB They have ..... a tour of Cairo's museums.
   a. done b. had c. taken d. driven
5. We all admire his ..... ideas. He will be a very good writer.
   a. boring b. creative c. selfish d. violent
6. My ..... is to be a successful scientist in the future.
   a. dream b. competition c. volunteer d. concert
7. The word "contest" is the synonym of the word ..... .
   a. composition b. player c. worker d. competition

8. SB She ..... been to another country yet.
a. hasn't b. has c. haven't d. have

9. You can drive your car. I have ..... mended it.
a. never b. since c. already d. yet

10. Shahd ..... her room alone.
a. has already tidied b. has tidied already
c. hasn't already tidied d. hasn't tidied already

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hamza ..... (not do) his homework yet.
2. ..... (you learn) English yet ?
3. Omar ..... (already arrive) at the class.
4. We ..... (has) already watched the film.

4 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

spectators - holds - achievement - be - clean

Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations seven times. That is a fantastic (1) ..... . In 2023, the contest will (2) ..... in Ivory Coast, who have already been winners twice before. The games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium (3) ..... about 60,000 (4) ..... .

5 Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Mona who lives in Canada about the importance of helping other people : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your name is Reham and your email address is rehammagdi@elmoasser.com.
Your friend's email address is monasaleh@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
Polish (adj)	بولندى (الجنسية)	fair (n)	معرض
respond (ed) (v) , (n)	يرد - يستجيب / رد	NASA (n)	الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (ناسا)
culture (n)	ثقافة	Society for Science	جمعية العلوم والعامة
the Science, Technology, Engineering and Math school (STEM)		مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	

تنويه

- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

perform (ed) (v)	يؤدى (عرض)	score (d) (v) , (n)	يسجل (هدفًا) - نتيجة
share (d) (v)	يشارك - يتقاسم	news (n)	اخبار
broken (adj)	منكسر	musician (n)	موسيقار / عازف
repair (ed) (v) , (n)	يصلح/إصلاح		

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

teenager (n)	مراهق	international (adj)	دولى
Columbia University (n)	جامعة كولومبيا	engineering (n)	الهندسة
later (adj)	فيما بعد - فى وقتٍ لاحق	swimmer (n)	سباح
Rio Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الاولمبية الصيفية فى مدينة ريو (البرازيل)	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية
connect (ed) (v)	يصل - يربط	believe (d) (v)	يؤمن - يصدق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
tell	يخبر	told	told
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

winner	another word for champion	فائز
competitor	a player in a tournament	متنافس
incredible	another word for fantastic	رائع / لا يصدق
spectators	the people who watch sports at a stadium	متفرجى الإستاد
workers	the group of people who work somewhere	عاملون

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

pass	an exam	يجتاز الامتحان
learn	a new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
watch	TV	يشاهد التلفاز
get	dressed	يرتدى الملابس
	home	يصل للمنزل
	an award	يحصل على جائزة
	a scholarship	يحصل على منحة دراسية
have	a baby	تنجب مولود
play	computer games	يلعب ألعاب الحاسوب
follow	their dreams	يتبعون أحلامهم
write	music	يؤلف موسيقى
eat	dinner	يتناول وجبة العشاء
	lunch	يتناول وجبة الغداء
	breakfast	يتناول وجبة الإفطار
win	an award	يفوز بجائزة (رسمية)

II Listening and Reading

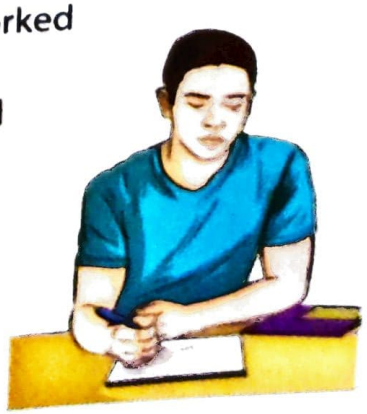
Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Malak : Hi Fareeda!
Fareeda : Hi Malak, guess what ? I just got the results of my music exam!
Malak : Yes ? How did you do ?!
Fareeda : I passed!
Malak : Of course you did! Well done! Great job!
Fareeda : But also, I got the highest score in the class!
Malak : Wow, you did really well - what an amazing achievement!
Fareeda : I can't believe it, I was so nervous doing the exam.
Malak : I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked really hard.
Fareeda : Thanks Malak.

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

1. **Mother:** You look happy, Nader.
2. **Nader** : I am ! I've won a short story competition !(1)
3. **Mother:** Well done(2) ! Was that a competition at your school ?
4. **Nader** : No, it was a short story competition for everyone.
5. **Mother:** For everyone ? What an amazing achievement(3). Didn't you win the school competition last year ?
6. **Nader** : Yes, I came second(4) in the class, so I worked harder this year !
7. **Mother:** I knew you would do well(5). You worked really hard.
8. **Nader** : Thanks. I'll get the award(6) next week.
9. **Mother:** I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch !



Check Vocabulary

(1) مسابقة كتابة قصة قصيرة	(2) احسنت صنعًا	(3) يا له من إنجاز رائع
(4) حصلت على المركز الثانى	(5) يؤدى جيدًا / ينجز	(6) يحصل على الجائزة

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

New message

Hi!

I've got some good news. I've won an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital decided to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it ?

on Lesson 6 WB page 107

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. After she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School (STEM)(1) in Alexandria.

She then learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture(2). When she was at school, she came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge(3), a problem solving competition for scientists around the world.

Later, she worked on a school project. She found a natural way(4) for villages to clean dirty water and to recycle used water. The recycled water is used to help plants to grow, and the project can also help to stop water pollution. She sent her project to the Society for Science(5) in the USA. In 2021, her project won fourth place in another international competition for science and engineering. Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	(2) ثقافة	
(3) مسابقة تحدى تطبيقات الفضاء من وكالة ناسا	(4) طريقة طبيعية	(5) جمعية العلوم

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

A biography about Nada Zaher

1. Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt.
2. As a child, she played a lot of tennis.
3. When she was a teenager(1), she found out that she had a sports scholarship(2) to go to Columbia University in the USA.
4. Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis.
5. After university(3), she returned to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes(4) to study in other countries.
6. So, she started a company(5) to connect(6) athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships.
7. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow(7) their dreams(8).

Check Vocabulary

(1) مراهق | (2) منحة رياضية | (3) جامعة | (4) رياضيون دوليون | (5) شركة | (6) توصل / تربط | (7) يتبع | (8) احلام

Listening

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Fares : Guess what ?(1) I have good news !

Mazin : What is it ?

Fares : I have got a scholarship to a university in Canada !

Mazin : Well done ! That's incredible(2).

Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazin : I'm really happy for you. You will play at an important tournament(3) soon!

Check Vocabulary

(1) خمن ماذا ؟ | (2) هذا لا يصدق | (3) دورى مسابقة رياضية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 at the age of .... = aged .... / in the age of (... في عمر)

ex.: - My uncle, Saad, died at the age of 58 / aged 58.

تستخدم in the age بمعنى (في عصر).

ex.: - In the stone age, people's tools were made of stone.

2 good at / good for / good to

* good at (جيد في) : ex.: - Hani is good at sport.
* good for (مفيد لـ) : ex.: - Milk is good for health.
* good to (عطوف على) : ex.: - You should be good to the orphans.

3 connect with / connect to

* connect .... with (يربط بـ / يرتبط بـ)

ex.: - She started a company to connect athletes with universities in the USA.

* connect .... to (يوصل ... بـ (الكهرباء / الانترنت ...))

ex.: - The computer is not connected to the internet.

4 born in / born into

* (be) born in (ولد في (سنه - بلد))

ex.: - Fady was born in (1998 / Alexandria).

* (be) born into + (عائلة) (ولد في (عائلة))

ex.: - Rahma was born into a rich family.

5 business – businesses

* business (n) (تجارة / عمل (كلمة لا تعد))

ex.: - She is busy doing her own business.

* businesses (n) (الأعمال التجارية / المشروعات أو المؤسسات التجارية)

ex.: - I think small businesses can help with the country's economy. (إقتصاد)

6 pass – succeed

* pass (n) يجتاز / ينجح

ex.: - He passed his final exams.

* succeed in + noun / (inf. + ing)

ex.: - He succeeded in his final exams.

- He succeeded in getting a place in a special school.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get 100 %	حصل على مئة بالمئة	get the result of	يحصل على نتيجة
have a place at a top university	حصل على مكان فى جامعة القمة	(be) surprised by ...	مندهش بـ ...
feel happy for ...	يشعر بالسعادة لـ ...	respond to	يستجيب لـ
return to	يعود إلى	(have) a scholarship for	يحصل على منحة دراسية لـ ....
do well	يؤدى جيدًا	connect ... with	يربط / يوصل بـ ...
Well done ! = Great job !	أحسنت صنعًا !	happy for ...	سعيد من أجل
come second in ...	حصل على المركز الثانى فى...	a problem solving competition for	مسابقة حل مشكلة لـ
a hospital for children	مستشفى للأطفال	work on a school project	يقوم بإنجاز مشروع مدرسى
from the age of 7	من عمر ٧ سنوات	win fourth place	يفوز بالمركز الرابع
from the earliest until now	من الأقدم حتى الآن		
as well as	بالإضافة إلى		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Jakub is from Poland. He is ..... .
   a. English b. Polish c. French d. British
2. I have got a ..... to a University of Cambridge in the UK.
   a. training b. tournament c. scholarship d. speech

3. Please, make a fact ..... about a young role model in your life.
   a. fill b. file c. fin d. fight

4. A/An ..... is an event which people, businesses,etc show and sell their goods.
   a. fair b. shop c. culture d. concert

SB and WB Exercises — تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB She started a company to ..... athletes with universities in the USA.
   a. correct b. connect c. return d. achieve

6. WB I have ..... the chair that was broken.
   a. won b. repaired c. come d. scored

7. WB I've already won many tournaments in my country, but I haven't been to the ..... .
   a. performance b. Olympics c. champion d. biography

El-Moasser Exercises — تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. **A :** You came first in a short story competition !
   B : Wow ! I can't ..... it. That's good news !
   a. work b. believe c. score d. play

9. Water is used to help plants to ..... .
   a. grow b. die c. return d. connect

10. A person who is between 13 and 19 years old is called a / an ..... .
    a. elderly b. adult c. child d. teenager

11. All students ..... the play well in our school performance yesterday.
    a. performed b. talked c. responded d. won

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Who ..... first in the contest ?
    a. went b. came c. took d. flew

13. Students start school ..... the age of six.
    a. for b. at c. in d. by

14. Last year, we worked ..... a school project.
    a. at b. in c. on d. about

15. She ..... in her final exams.
a. passed b. succeeded c. crossed d. told

16. Most successful people were born ..... poor families.
a. in b. on c. into d. onto

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
respond يرد / يستجيب	reply	ignore يتجاهل
fact حقيقة / واقع	truth	imagination خيال
repair يُصلح	mend / fix	spoil / break يفسد / يكسر

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
- ish	تحول البلد إلى الجنسية أو اللغة	Polish بولندى
- al	تحول الكلمة لصفة	international دولى
- ship	تكون اسم	scholarship منحة دراسية hardship مشقة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Synonym and antonyms

1. " Fix" is the synonym of the word " ..... ".
a. prepare b. fair c. repair d. refer

2. " ..... " is the opposite of "ignore".
a. Request b. Rewrite c. Respond d. Redial

3. The suffix (-ish) in the word "Polish" refers to the .....
a. job b. nationality c. hobby d. sport

4. The suffix ..... gives a noun of the word "hard".
a. - ment b. - ship c. - tion d. - est

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق (Master Your Term) Part 2

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٨٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think Nada Zaher started a company ?
   - **To help more international athletes by connecting them with universities in the USA and helping them to find scholarships.**
- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Where is Nada from ?
   - .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context**

تخمين معنى مفرده لغوية فى النص

3. The word "**returned**" in the passage means .....
   a. came back b. pretended c. connected d. swept

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

1. Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003.
١. ولدت فاطمة على البنا فى مدينة الإسكندرية فى عام ٢٠٠٣.
2. When she was a child, she loved learning about science.
٢. عندما كانت طفلة , كانت تحب تعلم العلوم.
3. She wanted to be a great scientist.
٣. أرادت أن تصبح عالمة عظيمة.
4. After she finished preparatory school, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Math school in Alexandria.
٤. بعد إنتهائها من الدراسة فى المرحلة الإعدادية بدأت الدراسة بمدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات فى مدينة الإسكندرية.
5. She came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge.
٥. حصلت على المركز الأول فى مصر فى مسابقة "تحدى تطبيقات الفضاء" الدولية من وكالة ناسا.
6. She found a natural way for villages to clean dirty water.
٦. لقد وجدت طريقة طبيعية للقرى لتنظيف المياه الغير نظيفة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

already - did - yet - scholarship - for - repaired

1. I've ..... the chair that was broken.
2. He has got a ..... to a university in Italy.
3. The boy has ..... watered the plants.
4. They haven't finished their homework ..... .
5. She ..... well in the final exam.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

- **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :**

"A biography about Fatma El-Banna"

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Responding to good news :

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة :

Stimuli	Responses
1. The football team won 2 - 0 ! ١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم (٢ - صفر) !	- They did really well. - لقد قاموا بأداء جيد حقًا.
2. He got 100% in his exam ! ٢. لقد حصل على ١٠٠ بالمئة فى الامتحان !	- What an amazing achievement. - ياله من انجاز رائع.
3. Merna is getting married ! ٣. ميرنا سوف تتزوج !	- I'm really happy for her. - أنا حقًا سعيد لأجلها.
4. Hala has a place at a top university. ٤. لقد حصلت هالة على مكان فى جامعة مرموقة.	- I knew she would do well. She worked really hard. - لقد كنت أعلم أنها ستؤدى بشكل جيد. لقد عملت باجتهاد حقًا.
5. I've repaired the broken chair. ٥. لقد قمت بإصلاح الكرسى المكسور.	- Great job. Well done ! - عملًا جيدًا . أحسنت !

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

An interviewer محاور is making an interview with an Egyptian space engineer.

Interviewer : Welcome, Samar. Can you tell us about your job ?

Samar : (1) ..... .

Interviewer : When did you want to be a space engineer ?

Samar : (2) ..... .

Interviewer : A young child ! That's great. (3) ..... ?

Samar : I studied space engineering in Cairo University.

Interviewer : (4) ..... ?

Samar : Yes, I won a space technology competition in the USA.

Interviewer : Were there any other competitors from Egypt in that competition ?

Samar : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB ..... an amazing achievement !
   a. Why b. What c. Where d. Who
2. SB The Polish musician Frederic Chopin ..... piano music.
   a. passed b. wrote c. won d. got
3. Samar ..... a contest in space technology.
   a. created b. took c. won d. learned
4. Congratulations ! You have ..... your exam.
   a. passed b. failed c. lost d. succeeded
5. Basel likes music very much. He dreams of ..... in a big concert.
   a. performing b. gaining c. making d. having

6. Soha plays a musical instrument. She wants to be a famous ..... when she grows up.

a. space scientist b. musician

c. nurse d. business person

7. WB A/An ..... is a player in a tournament.

a. competitor b. actor c. astronaut d. technician

8. She has ..... seen Cairo by night.

a. since b. ever c. already d. yet

9. Why are you so late ? - You ..... done the task yet.

a. have b. haven't c. has d. hasn't

10. SB I've ..... eaten breakfast.

a. already b. ever c. yet d. for

3 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

decided – won – has – play – children

Hi !

I've got some good news. I have (1) ..... an award ! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for (2) ..... . We (3) ..... games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital (4) ..... to give my family an award for our work.

4 WB Write a short biography of about (110) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous person"

Self Assessment Activity
التقييم الذاتى

ممتاز
جيد جداً
جيد
غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ..... في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ business person
- ☐ campaigner
- ☐ space science
- ☐ manager
- ☐ company
- ☐ goals
- ☐ astronaut
- ☐ creative

2 Read and write sentences using the present perfect with yet and already and the past simple.

اقرأ واكتب جمل مستخدمًا زمن المضارع التام (yet/already) والماضى البسيط.

- ☐ She has played in two concerts already.
- ☐ Have they painted the fence, yet ?
- ☐ He has already bought the cake.
- ☐ Soha didn't go to the park yesterday.

3 Talk about jobs, sports tournament and responding to good news.

اتحدث عن الوظائف والمسابقات الرياضية والرد على الأخبار السارة.

- ☐ **A :** How long have you had that job ?
- ☐ **B :** For five years / Since 2017.
- ☐ **A :** What's your favourite sports star ?
- ☐ **B :** He is Mo Salah.

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term . جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر
. جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 5

Vocabulary

campaigner	ناشط - مناضل
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
space scientist	عالم فضاء
champion	بطل
company	شركة
manager	مدير
science project	مشروع علمى
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
give speeches	يلقى خطابات
goals	أهداف
space technology	تكنولوچيا الفضاء
design	يصمم
receive the award	يتسلم الجائزة
equipment	معدات
create an app	يبتكر تطبيق
creative	مبدع
organisers	منظمين
bubble	فقاعة (طبية)
scholarships	منح دراسية

Language

1. The present perfect tense with already & yet :

"already"

- بمعنى (بالفعل) تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع وأكتمل وتأتى بين have/has والتصريف الثالث أو فى نهاية الجملة.

ex.: - He has already watched the film.

ex.: - He has watched the film already.

"yet"

- بمعنى (حتى الآن) تأتى فى نهاية الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية

ex.: - I haven't had my lunch yet.

ex.: - Have you finished your work yet ?

2. The past simple tense :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex.: - Hoda was happy yesterday.

ex.: - Did you park your car ?

Speaking

1. Discussing jobs

A : What does your brother do ?

B : He is a / an ..... .

A : When did he start his job ?

B : He started his job in / on ..... .

2. Talking about sports tournaments

A : What was the last sports tournament you watched in a stadium or on TV ?

3. Responding to good news :

A : I have passed the exam.

B : Well done.

SB page 53 WB page 108

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

قواعد جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني

A Paragraph / An email on

Someone's job / A creative person / A sports tournament / The World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt.

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة للاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What's your favourite sport ?
- What skills do you need for this job ?
- What does a creative person do ?
- What do the doctors do to help Egypt achieve this big dream ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- creative - manager - goals - achieve - organisers - bubble	- champion - campaigner - computer programmer	- company - equipment - create an app - science project

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- He has travelled to lots of interesting places.
- I'd like to be a .....
- He wanted to be a / an .....
- His dream is to .....
- He is interested in .....

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Someone's job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) فى كل وحدة والتى تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج.

unit 5

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

sports champion	بطل رياضى	astronaut	رائد فضاء
campaigner	ناشط - مناضل	education	تعليم
team	فريق	equipment	معدات
company	شركة	disabled people	ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
The Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	challenges	تحديات
space technology	تكنولوجيا الفضاء	creative person	شخص مبدع
give speeches	يُلقى خطابات	bubble	فقاعة (طبية)

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. There were(1) 600 teams in the contest.
2. Have you written the letter yet(2) ?
3. She has already(3) cooked the meal.
4. Mum has swept the floor already(4).
5. I have visited(5) the Egyptian museum.
6. Did(6) you help(7) your friend yesterday ?

Check Language

(1)	الفعل يكون (be) فى زمن الماضى البسيط
(2)	تستخدم yet مع الجملة الاستفهامية فى زمن المضارع التام
(3)	تستخدم already مع الجملة المثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام
(4)	يمكن أن توضع already فى أخر الجملة المثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام
(5)	جملة مثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام
(6)	صيغة السؤال بـ هل فى زمن الماضى البسيط
(7)	يكون الفعل فى المصدر عند السؤال بـ did

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Talking about jobs and sports tournaments.

Questions	Answers
1. Why would you like to be a/an ... ?	- As I like ..... .
2. When did you start it ?	- ..... years ago.
3. Who won the final match in the contest ?	- ..... team won the match.

General Exercises on unit

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Salwa is telling her cousin that she got a scholarship.

Salwa : How are you, Maha ?

Maha : Fine, and you ?

Salwa : I'm okay. I have good news.

Maha : (1) ..... ?

Salwa : (2) ..... .

Maha : A scholarship ! Well done ! Great news !

Salwa : (3) ..... .

Maha : (4) ..... ?

Salwa : There was an international competition and I won it.

Maha : Have you told your parents ?

Salwa : (5) ..... . You are the first to know.

2 SB Read the following passage then answer the questions :

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote. She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished **it** yet. She really likes to be creative. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing !

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an app to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit !

Maybe we can go travelling together.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think Aya is interested in Technology? Why / Why not ?

.....

2. Infer how many hobbies does Aya have ? Mention two.

.....

3. Explain how important voluntary work is for your city / village. Mention two points.

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The passage is about ..... .

a. Aya b. school days c. travel d. friends

5. Which of the following can be the best summary to the last paragraph ? - ..... .

a. Aya's dreams b. Aya's childhood

c. Jobs d. Travel

6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .

a. story b. first book c. second book d. app

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Nada wants to be a computer ..... in the future.

a. volunteer b. program c. application d. programmer

2. Munir would like to take part ..... the next match, but the captain refuses.

a. on b. in c. at d. about

3. To be successful, you need to work hard and have some special ..... .

a. bins b. pins c. skills d. skulls

4. WB A/ An ..... is someone who works with maths.

a. mathematician b. engineer

c. artist d. volunteer

5. WB Someone who works with science is called a / an ..... .

a. operator b. business person

c. scientist d. employer

6. SB The word "staff" gives the same meaning as ..... .

a. spectators b. puzzles c. workers d. hotels

7. There haven't been ..... in football matches because of coronavirus.

a. spectators b. stadiums c. balls d. players

8. Maya ..... to travel abroad since she was a student.
   a. is decided b. was decided c. is deciding d. has decided
9. I ..... the story.
   a. have already read b. already read have
   c. already have read d. have read already
10. Have they watered the plants ..... ?
   a. since b. ever c. for d. yet

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Samia ..... (not fix) her mobile yet.
2. The boy ..... (already buy) vegetables from the market alone.
3. ..... (Have) the teacher asked you to make a report yet ?
4. She has done her math homework ..... (yet).

5 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

for - after - started - culture - scientist

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great (1) ..... like Sameera Moussa. After she finished preparatory school, she (2) ..... at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School in Alexandria. She then learned more and more about science as well as how to look (3) ..... the environment and Egypt's (4) ..... .

6 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on : نموذج الإجابة في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography about a person you admire"

stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 5 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. I am good at computers so	a. ☐ one book already.
2. She won an award for writing	b. ☐ software you can use on your computer or phone.
3. He has finished writing	c. ☐ I want to be a campaigner.
4. It was a real challenge to climb a mountain,	d. ☐ When she was a child.
5. An app is	e. ☐ I want to be a computer programmer.
	f. ☐ but we succeeded !

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They have already **see** Cairo by night. (.....)
2. "Look ! I've finished my painting !" Great **paint**. (.....)
3. Someone who works with science is **an artist**. (.....)
4. Aya hasn't been to another country **already**. (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sama passed her exams ..... top marks last week.
   a. about b. for c. with d. on
2. The ..... on that plane are hardworking.
   a. staff b. Olympics c. crew d. audience
3. A/An ..... is written by a person about another person.
   a. autobiography b. biography
   c. competition d. championship
4. Fruits and vegetables are good ..... health.
   a. to b. at c. for d. on
5. The TV programme has lost favour with ..... recently.
   a. viewers b. spectators c. audience d. onlookers

UNIT 6

What's wrong ?

SB pages 54 : 63 WB pages 109 : 115

Objectives

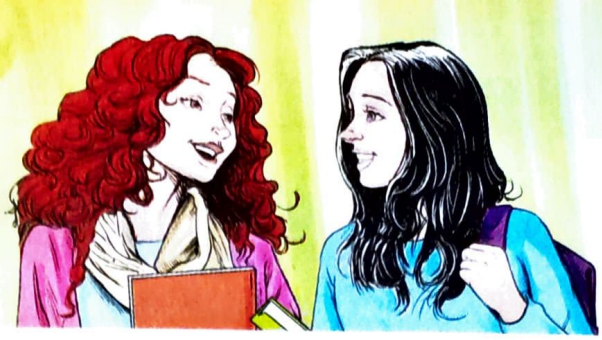
- **Reading :**
  An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems
- **Language :**
  had to / didn't have to, was / wasn't able to, could / couldn't
- **Life skills :**
  Empathy

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
- للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 54 : 57 WB pages 109 & 110



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

teenager = teen (n)	مراهق	social life (n)	الحياة الاجتماعية
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	anxious (adj)	قلق - متوتر
achievements (n)	إنجازات	embarrassed (adj)	محرج
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكترونى	upset (adj)	متضايق - منزعج
abilities (n)	قدرات	support (ed) (v) , (n)	يدعم - يساند - دعم / مساندة
billion (n)	بليون (ألف مليون)	secret (n)	سر
appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجى	lonely (adj)	منعزل - وحيد

تنويه

- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

height (n)	طول القامة	music club (n)	نادى الموسيقى
common (adj)	شائع - منتشر	report (ed) (v) (n)	يخبر - يبلغ عن / تقرير
importance (n)	أهمية	helpful (adj)	مساعد - مفيد
mental health (n)	الصحة العقلية	share (d) (v)	يشارك
art club (n)	نادى الفنون	experiences (n)	تجارب - خبرات
school work (n)	العمل المدرسى	important (adj)	هام
website (n)	موقع الكترونى	join (ed) (v)	ينضم - يلتحق
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	language club (n)	نادى اللغات
study (n)	دراسة	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

fail (ed) (v)	يفشل	anyone (pron)	أى شخص
speaking (n)	التحدث	behaviour (n)	سلوك

British (adj)	بريطانى (الجنسية)	choice (n)	إختيار
offer (ed) (v) , (n)	يعرض / يقدم - عرض	somebody (pron)	شخص ما
nobody (pron)	لا أحد	opinions (n)	آراء

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spread	ينشر	spread	spread
spend	يقضى	spent	spent

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	something important that you have done	إنجاز
social life	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people	الحياة الاجتماعية
appearance	the way that someone or something looks	المظهر الخارجى
billion	a thousand million (1,000,000,000)	بليون (ألف مليون)
support	help and encourage someone	يدعم -يساند

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

keep	secrets	يحفظ الأسرار	tell	a secret	يخبر سر
join	a club	ينضم لنادى	show	empathy	يظهر التعاطف
have	a problem	لديه مشكلة		understanding	يظهر التفاهم
	friends	لديه أصدقاء	use	a computer	يستخدم الحاسب الآلى
	a haircut	يحصل على قصة شعر		technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا
	an opinion	لديه رأى	get	anxious	يقلق / يشعر بالقلق
	similar interests	لديه اهتمامات متشابهة	spend	time	يقضى وقت

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Hisham : I agree that most of these are common problems for teenagers. Most of us aren't completely happy with our appearance. I'm embarrassed about being so tall, for example.

Kamal : You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive thing ! For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious about them.

Hisham : I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at me in PE.

Kamal : Cyberbullying is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced it.

Hisham : Yes, that is really scary. For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really upset.

Kamal : What did she do ?

Hisham : She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

Kamal : It's good that she talked to someone about it.

Hisham : That's right.

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Today, nearly(1) four billion(2) people use social media in their daily lives. Some studies have found that around(3) 63% of people report(4) feeling upset(5) and anxious(6) after using social media.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حوالى / تقريبا | (2) بليون (ألف مليون) | (3) حوالى | (4) يبلغ - يخبر عن | (5) متضايق | (6) قلق

On the other hand[7], social media can be helpful because we can share experiences[8] and support[9] each other. People can spread[10] positive messages this way about the importance[11] of looking after our mental health[12].

Check Vocabulary

(7) على الجانب الآخر	(8) يشارك الخبرات	(9) يدعم - يساند	(10) ينشر	(11) أهمية	(12) الصحة العقلية

on Lesson 1 WB page 109

b appearance[1]

1. I had a haircut last week and I think it is terrible ! I'm embarrassed[2] to go out and see my friends !

e social life[3]

2. All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.

c cyberbullying[4]

3. Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class unkind messages on social media[5]. I'm worried that I will start receiving[6] them, too.

d skills[7] **and abilities**[8]

4. I've tried to join an art club, a language club and a music club, but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest[9]. I'm just not good at these things !

a achievements[10]

5. My sister is 18 and she has won lots of competitions[11] and done really well in her exams. I don't think I will ever be as good as her !

Check Vocabulary

(1) المظهر الخارجى	(2) محرج	(3) الحياة الاجتماعية	(4) التنمر الالكترونى	(5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	
(6) إستلام	(7) مهارات	(8) قدرات	(9) يقترح	(10) انجازات	(11) مسابقات

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

Teen problems

1

Nobody knows that I failed(1) my English speaking test, and I feel very embarrassed about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, 'Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a secret(2). The next day, my friend's mother, who is British(3), offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.

Magda

2

I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions(4) about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree(5), and I feel that I am very different(6) from them. It makes me feel lonely(7).

Salma

3

My parents want me to be a doctor when I finish school. A doctor has to be good at science subjects(8), however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to disappoint(9) them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

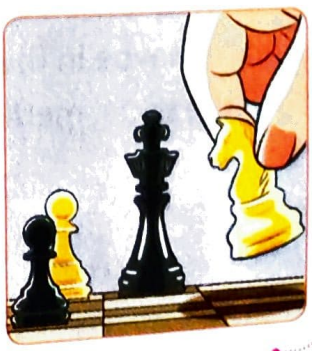
Adam

Check Vocabulary

(1) يفشل - يرسب	(2) سر	(3) بريطانى	(4) آراء	(5) يوافق
(6) مختلف	(7) يشعر بالوحدة		(8) مواد علمية	(9) يحبط

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

1 Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets(1). However, you don't have to see this as a negative thing since she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer(2) ?



Check Vocabulary

(1) يحتفظ بالأسرار	(2) عرض

2 How about joining a club[3] to meet people with similar interests ? You don't have to belong to[4] only one group of friends.

3 You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding[5] than you think.

Check Vocabulary

(3) يلتحق بنادى	(4) ينتمى إلى	(5) متفهم

Videoscript

Social media[1] is very popular in Egypt. Almost 50 million people in the country often use it. They spend three hours a day on average[2] to connect with their friends, watch videos and share photographs. People often communicate with each other in both Arabic and English on social media.

But do you know how people communicated with each other in the past ? They weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones and they couldn't look at each other's photographs on social media.

Important events[3] in ancient Egypt were recorded using a form of writing called hieroglyphics[4]. But there were also people called "scribes"[5] who used an easier form of hieroglyphics called hieratic[6] to record what was happening every day. Scribes were important people and they recorded the laws[7], the food that farmers grew, and the amount of money people gave to the pharaohs[8] every year.

Because many people weren't able to write, they had to ask scribes to write letters and messages to send to their friends and family. In fact, we know a lot about Ancient Egypt today because of the work of these scribes. Maybe in the future, people will know about Egypt today because of all the social media messages.

Check Vocabulary

(1) التواصل الاجتماعى	(2) فى المتوسط	(3) احداث هامة	(4) اللغة الهيروغليفية
(5) الكَتبة	(6) خاص باللغة الهيروغليفية	(7) قوانين	(8) الفراعنة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 teenager - adult

* teenager — مراهق (ذوى الأعمار من ١٣ - ١٩)

ex.: Ali is at prep school. He is a teenager.

* adult = grown up — بالغ / راشد

ex.: He is an adult. He has got experience.

2 What's wrong ? = What's the matter ?

تستخدم للاستفسار عن أمر ما / مشكلة ما ...

Doctor : What's wrong ?

Patient : I've a severe headache. — صداع شديد

3

لاحظ :

الكلمات الآتية لا تجمع إذا سبقها عدد ...

(hundred – thousand - million - billion)

ex.: SB Nearly four billion people use social media in their daily lives.

ولكن : يمكن جمعها إذا لم يسبقها عدد

ex.: Hundreds of people gathered to see the king.

4 lonely (adj) — حزين - وحيد

ex.: He feels lonely as he has no friends.

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the UK	فى المملكة المتحدة	worry about	يقلق بشأن
embarrassed about	محرج بسبب	fail a test	يرسب فى اختبار
feel bad about	يشعر بالسوء بشأن	offer to + inf.	يعرض أن
anxious about	قلق بشأن	unhappy with	حزين بـ
feel upset	يشعر بالضيق	around 63%	حوالى ٦٣٪
in their daily lives	فى حياتهم اليومية	for me	بالنسبة لى
on the other hand	على الجانب الآخر	have no choice	ليس لديه اختيار
share experiences	يشارك التجارب والخبرات	in a positive way	بطريقة إيجابية
support each other	ندعم بعضنا البعض	change behaviour	يغير سلوك

spread positive messages	ينشر رسائل إيجابية	feel about	يشعر نحو
look after	يعتنى بـ	this sort of information	هذا النوع من المعلومات
use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا	belong to	ينتمى إلى
(be) positive for	يكون إيجابى بشأن	feel positive about	يشعر بالإيجابية نحو
(be) negative for	يكون سلبى بشأن	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
find it difficult to + inf.	يجد صعوبة أن ...		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Charities ..... poor people with food and clothes.
   a. share b. support c. join d. upset
2. She was ..... when she dropped the phone.
   a. happy b. lonely c. excited d. embarrassed
3. I get ..... about exams.
   a. anxious b. lost c. wet d. sleep
4. Every good thing you have done is a/an ..... .
   a. life b. work c. achievement d. appearance
5. ..... is something you try to hide.
   a. Skill b. Secret c. Study d. Text

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. WB I've tried to ..... an art club.
   a. join b. go c. have d. spend
7. WB When you show someone that you know how he or she feels, then you show ..... .
   a. competition b. empathy c. taste d. exam
8. SB You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your ..... is a positive thing.
   a. weight b. fast c. distance d. height
9. SB The unkind text messages made her feel really ..... .
   a. upset b. excited c. important d. positive

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. We can ..... our experience with others on social media.
    a. hide b. share c. encourage d. get

11. Drinking tea is ..... in Egypt.
a. helpful b. special c. secret d. common

12. Which of these is one of English language skills ?
a. Communication b. Searching
c. Speaking d. Painting

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Mostafa is poor. ..... the other hand, he is so generous.
a. On b. In c. Over d. At

14. Lamees is different ..... Walaa.
a. for b. from c. into d. in

15. This key ..... to Farida. Give it to her.
a. owns b. brings c. belongs d. has

16. We are not similar. We ..... different opinions.
a. hold b. catch c. have d. carry

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
kind طيب	friendly / gentle / good	unkind قاس - غير طيب
similar متشابه	like	different مختلف
well بطريقة جيدة	fully	badly بطريقة سيئة
clear واضح - صافى	plain-apparent	hidden/unclear خفى/غير واضح
certain متأكد	sure	uncertain/unsure غير متأكد
anxious = worried قلق - مشغول البال	nervous-upset disturbed	quiet/peaceful/calm هادىء - مطمئن
embarrassed مُحرج - خجلان	uncomfortable - uneasy	confident واثق من نفسه

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
any –	تعطى معنى أى	anybody أى شخص anyone أى شخص anytime أى وقت
no –	تعطى معنى لا يوجد	nobody لا أحد no one لا أحد

some –	تعطى معنى يوجد لكن بدون تحديد الكم/العدد	something somebody someone	شئ ما شخص ما شخص ما

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm embarrassed to go out and see my friends. The word "embarrassed" can be replaced by "……".
   a. easy b. calm c. uncomfortable d. confident
2. There isn't anybody in the meeting. …… came to the meeting.
   a. Anybody b. Nobody c. Somebody d. Something
3. The synonym of the word …… is apparent.
   a. kind b. similar c. anxious d. clear
4. The opposite of "certain" is "……".
   a. unsure b. sure c. hidden d. nervous

III Language

A Must / Mustn't : يجب أن / يجب ألا

1 Affirmative الاثبات → **Subject** الفاعل + **must** يجب أن + **inf.**

ex. - Drivers must follow traffic rules.

- **We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary.**

تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتحدث عن أشياء من الضرورى القيام بها.(إلزام داخلى)

2 Negative النفى → **Subject** الفاعل + **mustn't** يجب ألا + **inf.**

ex. - I'll tell you a secret, but you mustn't tell anyone !

- **We use "mustn't" to talk about things that are necessary to avoid.**

تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتحدث عن أشياء من الضرورى تجنبها أو عدم القيام بها.

(a) Yes/No question : السؤال بـ « هل »

Must + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

ex. - Must I park here ?
- Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(b) Wh-question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + mustn't / must + subject الفاعل + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - What must you do when you go to a library ?

B have to / has to يجب أن / من الضروري أن / لابد أن

We use "have to/ has to" when something is essential to do (you have no choice).

ex. - I have to pass the driving test to get a licence. رخصة
- He has to pay the bills فواتير on time.

1 Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم (have to / has to) عندما يكون شيء ما من الضروري القيام به (ليس لديك اختيار) بمعنى أنه (إلزام خارجي).

We use "don't have to / doesn't have to" when something is not essential to do.

ex. - Ahmed doesn't have to get up early at weekends.
- Reem and Sama don't have to attend the meeting.

تستخدم (don't have to / doesn't have to) عندما يكون شيء ما ليس من الضروري القيام به (إلزام خارجي).

② Affirmative الاثبات

I/We/You/They (اسم جمع) + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + has to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - My father has to go to work at 6 am tomorrow, for a meeting.
- I have to be good at science subjects.

③ Negative النفى

I/We/You/They (اسم جمع) + don't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + doesn't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - I don't have to get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday !
- He doesn't have to hurry. He isn't late for school.

(a) Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل»

Do / Does + subject الفاعل + have to + inf. ?

ex. - Do you have to get up early ?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
- Does Adam have to travel to England ?
- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

④ Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(b) Wh-question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + do / does + subject الفاعل + have to ... ?

ex. - What do you have to do at home to help your parents ?

لاحظ أن :

استخدام (have to) بعد do أو does فى صيغة الاستفهام.

C "should & shouldn't" ينبغى أن / ينبغى ألا

Usage الاستخدام

- We use should /shouldn't for advice or to talk about things that are or are not a good idea to do.

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) للنصيحة أو للحديث عن الأشياء التى من الجيد أو من غير الجيد القيام بها أو أنها ليست فكرة جيدة.

ex. - You should talk to them. People shouldn't tell others this sort of information.

تستخدم للنصح بفعل أشياء مفيدة أو جيدة :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative الاثبات

Subject الفاعل + should ينبغى أن + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - You should choose your friends carefully.

تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :

2 Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + shouldn't ينبغى ألا + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - You shouldn't say unkind things to people on social media.

عند طلب النصيحة نستخدم : السؤال بـ «هل»

(a) Yes/No question :

Should + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

ex. - Should I go out now ?

- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

(b) Wh-question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام + should shouldn't + subject الفاعل + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - What should you do when you go to a swimming pool ?

D "might for possibility"

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "might" to say that something is possible or uncertain.
نستخدم "might" للتعبير عن احتمالية أو عدم التأكد من حدوث شئ ما.

Formation التكوين

Affirmative الاثبات → Subject الفاعل + might + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - They might be more understanding than you think.
- I might go to the stadium, but I'm unsure.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I ..... be good at science subjects. I want to join the Faculty of Science.
a. have to b. must c. should d. might

2. You ..... study hard to get good marks. This is my advice.
a. have b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't

3. Ahmed is absent today. He ..... be ill. I'm not sure.
a. should b. must c. hast to d. might

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	a تستخدم (have to) للتعبير عن شئ سامى لا غنى عنه / (الزام خارجى) لأنك إن لم تكون جيد فى المواد العلمية، لن تستطيع دخول كليه العلوم
2	b تستخدم (should) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شىء جيد
3	d تستخدم (might) لأن الجملة تعبر عن احتمال / عدم تأكد

Exercises on Language

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB A doctor has to ..... good at science subjects.
   a. been b. being c. be d. to be
2. WB You ..... say unkind things to people on social media.
   a. shouldn't b. must c. had to d. have to
3. SB Good friends ..... keep secrets.
   a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. don't have d. must
4. WB Tarek is worried because he ..... do badly in his exam.
   a. must b. might c. has to d. had to
5. WB I ..... get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday !
   a. shouldn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. has to

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Omaima ..... wear glasses because she can't see.
   a. mustn't b. have to c. has to d. have
7. You ..... study biology to join the Faculty of Medicine.
   a. have to b. mustn't c. should d. didn't have to
8. You ..... take photos here. It's forbidden.
   a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't
9. Habiba has three jackets. She ..... to buy another one.
   a. don't have b. must c. mustn't d. doesn't have
10. Hany has a lot of work to do. He ..... come home late. It's probable.
    a. must b. might c. should d. have to
11. Younis ..... drink polluted water.
    a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. mustn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

1. WB What do you ..... (must) to do ?
2. SB They might ..... (been) more understanding than you think.

3. WB You ..... (mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer.
4. WB My father ..... (have) to go to work at 6 a. m for a meeting.

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Salma has to ..... (got) a passport to travel to London.
6. We ..... (doesn't) have to hurry, we aren't late for school.
7. You ..... (mustn't) see a doctor. You have been ill for a week.
8. You ..... (must) park your car here. It's against the law.
9. Do you have to ..... (finished) your work tonight ?
10. ..... (Does) Ali and Sara have to travel to Luxor ?

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى ملحق Part 2 (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 56 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٠٩ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why does Salma think her friends are different from her ?

- Because they have very different opinions about things.

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

2. What problem was Magda embarrassed about ?

- .....

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the pronoun "**me**" in the last paragraph refer to ?

- .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى.

"Feelings المشاعر"

1. I find it difficult to feel positive about school these days.
١. أجد أنه من الصعب الشعور تجاه المدرسة بطريقة إيجابية هذه الأيام.
2. I'm anxious about my exams.
٢. أنا قلق بشأن الامتحانات الخاصة بى.
3. I often feel lonely.
٣. غالبًا أشعر بالوحدة.
4. I am embarrassed to tell anyone that I feel upset.
٤. اشعر بالحرج بأن اقول لأى أحد أننى أشعر بالضيقة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

shouldn't - playground - library - secrets - mustn't - don't have to

1. You ..... park your car here. It isn't allowed.
2. They ..... get up early as it is a holiday.
3. You ..... say unkind things to anyone.
4. At the ....., you must be quiet.
5. Friends must keep ..... .

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :
"teenagers' problems"

.....

.....

.....

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Discussing teenagers' worries :

مناقشة قلق المراهقين :

Questions	Answers
1. What are teenagers worried about ? ماذا يقلق المراهقون ؟	- They are worried about some problems like appearance, abilities and achievements. - هم قلقون حيال بعض المشكلات مثل المظهر الخارجى والقدرات والانجازات.
2. What can you do to help them ? ماذا تستطيع أن تفعل لمساعدتهم ؟	- We can help by giving them the suitable advice. - يمكننا مساعدتهم بتقديم النصائح المناسبة.

Using of technology : إستخدام التكنولوجيا :

Questions	Answers
1. How can the uses of mobile phones be positive or negative for your mental health ? كيف يمكن أن يكون لإستخدامات الهاتف المحمول تأثير إيجابى أو سلبى على صحتك العقلية ؟	- Positives of using mobile phone: - إيجابيات إستخدام الهاتف المحمول: 1. Instant communication - الاتصال الفورى 2. Entertainment - الترفيه / التسلية 3. Academic help - المساعدة الأكاديمية 4. Increased convenience - زيادة الراحة - Negatives of using mobile phone: - سلبيات استخدام الهاتف المحمول: 1. stress - القلق والتوتر 2. sleep loss - فقد النوم 3. cyberbullying - التنمر الإلكترونى 4. vision problems - المشاكل البصرية

Skills corner

★ **تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :**

- **مهارة القراءة** : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات – اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص – مهارة التفكير النقدي.
- **مهارة الكتابة** : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم – التهجى – ترابط الافكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).
- **مهارة التحدث** : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة فى الامتحان.

المعاصر فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is talking to his younger brother Adham who spends much time on social media.

Ayman : Adham, Where are you ?

Adham : (1) ..... .

Ayman : (2) ..... ?

Adham : I'm chatting with my friend.

Ayman : Have you done your homework ?

Adham : (3) ..... .

Ayman : (4) ..... ?

Adham : Because I feel upset and anxious.

Ayman : This is a normal result of spending much time on social media.

Adham : (5) ..... . What should I do ?

Ayman : Using social media for half an hour every day is enough.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB A / An ..... means something important that you have done.
   a. cyberbullying b. ability
   c. achievement d. secret

2. She often feels worried ..... exams.
   a. off b. for c. from d. about

3. Always make friends with people who have ..... interests to you.
   a. strange b. similar c. foreign d. different

4. I think this is a good flat . ..... the other hand, it is cheap.
   a. On b. At c. In d. About

5. SB For me, exams are a problem. I got very ..... about them.
   a. quiet b. relaxed c. cheerful d. anxious

6. Don't be ..... ! He didn't mean to make you angry.
   a. positive b. upset c. pleased d. happy
7. I'm ..... about being very short although my parents said that's okay.
   a. pleased b. excited c. embarrassed d. delighted
8. You ..... make noise at libraries. It's not allowed.
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. shouldn't
9. You ..... study hard before exams.
   a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. need
10. You ..... stay up late. It's bad for your health.
    a. don't have b. should c. must d. shouldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You ..... (have clean) the table. I have cleaned it.
2. You ..... (smoke) here. It's not allowed.
3. She ..... (must) see her present. I'm not sure.
4. They ..... (should) eat many sweets.

4 SB Complete the sentences with these words :

after - hand - studies - share - hate

Today, nearly four billion people use social media in their daily lives. Some (1)..... have found that around 63% of people report feeling upset and anxious after using social media. On the other (2)....., social media can be helpful because we can (3)..... experiences and support each other. People can spread positive messages this way about the importance of looking (4)..... our mental health.

5 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Social media in our life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 3&4

SB pages 58 : 60 WB pages 111 & 112

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	include (d) (v)	يضم / يشتمل على
cyberbully (ied) (v)	يتنمر على الإنترنت	mindfulness (n)	يقظة
comment (n)	تعليق	breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس
joke (d) (v) , (n)	يمزح - نكتة	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
mindful (adj)	يقظ - منتبه	feelings (n)	مشاعر

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

readers (n)	قراء	realise (d) (v)	يدرك
part (n)	جزء	hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى
certain (adj)	معين - محدد	luckily (adv)	لحسن الحظ
closed = locked (adj)	مغلق	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
telephone (d) (v)	يتصل تليفونيًا	waterfall (n)	شلال
life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة	engine (n)	محرك

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 112

culture (n)	ثقافة	facts (n)	حقائق
deeply (adv)	بشدة - بعمق	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
afterwards (adv)	بعدئذ - فى ما بعد	breathing (n)	عملية التنفس
calmly (adv)	بهدوء	health (n)	صحة
mind (n)	عقل		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hurt يؤذى - يجرح - يؤلم	hurt	hurt

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

mental health	shows the health of your mind, or how happy you are	الصحة العقلية
breathe	take air in and out of your body	يتنفس
relax	become comfortable and less worried	يسترخى
mindful	being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment	منتبه - يقظ
feelings	what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.	مشاعر
mindfulness	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment	اليقظة - الحرص التام
empathy	this means showing someone that you understand how they feel.	تعاطف

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	a test	يؤدى اختبار	**play**	a sport	يمارس رياضة
have	a test	لديه اختبار		a game	يلعب مباراة
choose	friends	يختار أصدقائه	**feel**	better	يشعر بالتحسن
go	home	يذهب للمنزل	**do**	better	يؤدى أداء جيدًا
show	empathy	يظهر التعاطف			

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• **on Lesson 4 SB page 60**

Boy 1 : In mindfulness classes, we learn that it's Ok to have negative thoughts(1), like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) افكار سلبية

Girl 1 : In the class you have to close your eyes, breathe in[2], count to 5, then breathe out[3] slowly. Breathing like this makes you feel calm.

Boy 2 : In the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the present only, what's happening right now. The reason for this is we can't change the future or the past, we can only do something about the present.

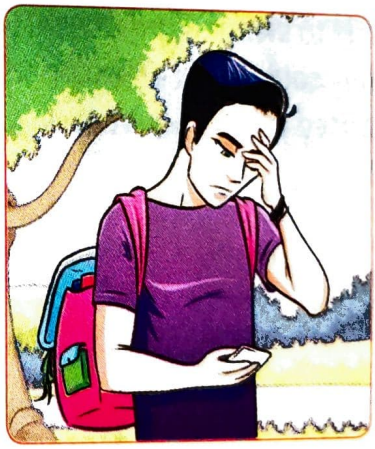
Girl 2 : In mindfulness, you have to learn to find happiness[4] in simple things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks. This is a new way of doing everyday things.

Check Vocabulary

(2) يستنشق الهواء | (3) يخرج الهواء | (4) سعادة

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 58



I always wanted to be part of a certain group[1] of popular students. One day, they suggested[2] that we cyberbully[3] a boy in my class called Fawzi, so I wrote an unkind comment[4] about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise[5] that they were joking[6], and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include[7] me in their group. I am so embarrassed[8] about what I did.

However, I hope my experience[9] will have a positive result[10], too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجموعة معينة	(2) يقترح	(3) يتنمر على الإنترنت	(4) تعليق	(5) يدرك
(6) يمزح	(7) يضم	(8) محرج	(9) خبرة / تجربة	(10) نتيجة ايجابية

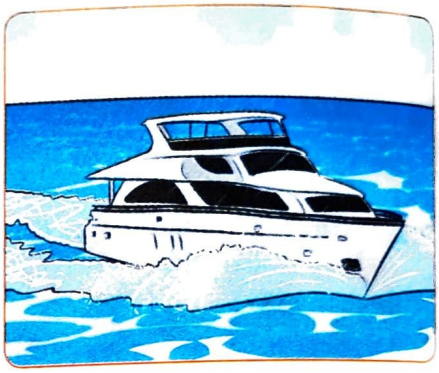
I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully[11] and always be kind to people.

Hussein

Check Vocabulary

(11) بعناية

on Lesson 3 WB page 111



Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life jacket[1] and he said I had to walk carefully around[2] the boat[3] but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then the engine[4] stopped! We tried to start[5] it, but we couldn't. I was able to swim well, but I knew that I wasn't able to swim to the beach. So my uncle could telephone[6] for help! They said they could send a helicopter[7] to help us. However, suddenly the engine started again ! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جاكت النجاة | (2) حول | (3) قارب | (4) محرك | (5) يشغل | (6) يتصل تليفونيًا | (7) مروحية

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

The DAILY News

As part of a plan[1] to improve[2] students' mental health[3], more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness[4] as a part of the timetable[5]. In a mindfulness class, students learn to breathe[6] slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خطة | (2) يُحسن | (3) الصحة العقلية | (4) اليقظة | (5) جدول مواعيد | (6) يتنفس

I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully(11) and always be kind to people.

Hussein

Check Vocabulary

(11) بعناية

• on Lesson 3 WB page 111

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life jacket(1) and he said I had to walk carefully around(2) the boat(3) but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then the engine(4) stopped! We tried to start(5) it, but we couldn't. I was able to swim well, but I knew that I wasn't able to swim to the beach. So my uncle could telephone(6) for help! They said they could send a helicopter(7) to help us. However, suddenly the engine started again ! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جاكت النجاة | (2) حول | (3) قارب | (4) محرك | (5) يشغل | (6) يتصل تليفونيًا | (7) مروحية

• on Lesson 4 SB page 60

The DAILY News

As part of a plan(1) to improve(2) students' mental health(3), more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness(4) as a part of the timetable(5). In a mindfulness class, students learn to breathe(6) slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خطة | (2) يُحسن | (3) الصحة العقلية | (4) اليقظة | (5) جدول مواعيد | (6) يتنفس

However[7], trying to think only about the present helps us to relax[8], and to really think deeply about everything we are doing at the moment. This helps to stop us from feeling anxious[9] or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to feel better about themselves, and afterwards[10], they do better at their school work, too.

Check Vocabulary

(7) على الرغم من | (8) يسترخى | (9) يشعر بالقلق | (10) فى ما بعد

on Lesson 4 WB page 112

Ashraf : I understand my feelings better now. For example[1], when I feel angry[2], I play a sport. I usually find I play better !

Lamar : It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling anxious. We had a test last week and I did badly. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.

Mariam : It's morning. I can hear the wind[3] in the trees and the birds singing. I am breathing slowly and carefully[4].

Check Vocabulary

(1) على سبيل المثال | (2) غاضب | (3) رياح | (4) بعناية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 share / divide

* share (v) ... with ... — يشارك (شىء) مع (شخص)

ex.: - We shared our food with our friends.

* divide ... into — يقسم ... إلى ...

ex.: - Mum divided the melon into pieces.

2 breathe / breath

* breathe (v) يتنفس

ex.: - He fell down and couldn't breathe.

* breath (n) نفس

ex.: - He took a deep breath to relax.

3 joke (v) / (n) يمزح / نكته

ex.: - He is joking. He is not serious. (فعل)

- All people like him. He always tells jokes. (اسم)

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

share with	يشارك مع	think deeply	يفكر بتمعن
part of	جزء من	stop ... from ...	يمنع - يتوقف ... عن ...
on social media	فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
include ... in ...	يضمن / يتضمن ... فى ...	be friends with	يكون على صداقة مع
hurt badly	يؤلم بشدة	stay up late	يسهر حتى وقت متأخر
able to	قادر على	go into	يدخل
kind to	عطوف على	say sorry to	يعتذر لى
revise for	يراجع لـ ...	write an unkind comment about	يكتب تعليقات غير طيبة عن
sorry about	حزين على	leave the airport	يغادر المطار
breathe in and out slowly	يشهق ويزفر ببطىء	do badly	يؤدى أداء غير جيد

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Adel is very funny, he always ..... .
   a. reads b. jokes c. suggests d. talks
2. They refused to ..... me in their team.
   a. offer b. share c. include d. plan
3. When you feel worried, ... in and out slowly.
   a. breathe b. freeze c. pass d. breath

4. Fans write comments on their stars' ..... posts.
a. fact b. blog c. home d. flag

SB and WB Exercises
تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB I wanted to be part of a certain ..... of popular students.
a. group b. plan c. game d. class
6. SB Some online messages can ..... people very badly.
a. build b. improve c. help d. hurt
7. SB You should ..... your friends carefully.
a. pick b. choose c. have d. take
8. In a ..... class, students learn to breathe slowly and to only think of the present.
a. cyberbullying b. mindfulness c. mindlessress d. fact

El-Moasser Exercises
تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. The magazine asked its ..... to write their opinions of its articles.
a. engineers b. readers c. gamers d. players
10. When the ..... stopped working, they started to push their car.
a. cooker b. fire c. fan d. engine
11. My little cousin likes to wear life ..... in the pool.
a. belt b. cap c. jacket d. coat

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. You should be kind ..... your mates.
a. of b. to c. at d. for
13. I want to be friends ..... the new student.
a. with b. to c. for d. at
14. My mother tried to stop my father ..... smoking.
a. to b. from c. in d. at
15. There is a lot of false information ..... social media.
a. in b. at c. on d. of
16. I share my room ..... my sister.
a. at b. with c. from d. about

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
quickly بسرعة	fast	slowly ببطء
future المستقبل	later-planned	past الماضى

after	بعد	next		before	قبل
comfortable	مستريح	relaxed		upset	مضطرب - منزعج
mindful	منتبه - يقظ	aware		unaware / mindless	غافل /غير واع
closed	مغلق	locked		opened	مفتوح

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
– ness	تحول من صفة إلى اسم	happiness	السعادة
		mindfulness	اليقظة
– ly	تحول من صفة إلى ظرف	calmly	بهدوء
		deeply	بعمق
		quickly	بسرعة
		slowly	ببطء
		luckily	لحسن الحظ

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Think ..... before you make a decision.
   a. deep b. deepness c. deeply d. deepen
2. When you are upset, this means you don't feel ..... .
   a. uncomfort b. comfortable c. uncomfortable d. comfort
3. The antonym of "mindful" is ..... .
   a. aware b. unaware c. careful d. relaxed
4. When someone is calm, this means he speaks ..... .
   a. calm b. calmy c. calmness d. calmliness
5. "....." has the same meaning of "closed".
   a. Kept b. Covered c. Opened d. Locked

III Language

A Had to & didn't have to : كان من الضرورى أن / لم يكن من الضرورى:

- We use (had to / didn't have to) to talk about things that were or were not necessary or essential to do in the past.

نستخدم (had to / didn't have to) للحديث عن الأشياء التى كان من الضرورى القيام / لم يكن من الضرورى القيام بها فى الماضى.

1 Affirmative الاثبات →

Subject الفاعل + **had to** + **inf.**

تعبر عن شيئاً كان من الضرورى القيام به فى الماضى.

ex. - He had to stay up late last night to revise for a maths test.

2 Negative النفى →

Subject الفاعل + **didn't have to** + **inf.**

ex. - I didn't have to do what my friends suggested.

تعبر عن شيئاً لم يكن من الضرورى القيام به فى الماضى.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام →

1. Yes / No question : ١. السؤال بـ(هل)

Did + **subject** الفاعل + **have to** + **inf... ?** مصدر الفعل

ex. - Did you have to go to the dentist ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

2. Wh - question : ٢. السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام + **did** + **subject** الفاعل + **have to ... ?**

ex. - What did you have to do at primary school ?

لاحظ أن :

استخدام (have to) بعد did فى صيغة الاستفهام.

B Expressing ability and inability in the past :
التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى الماضى:

- We use (could -was / were able to) to talk about past abilities.
نستخدم (could - was / were able to) للتعبير عن القدرة على القيام بشئ ما فى زمن الماضى.
- We use (couldn't - wasn't / weren't able to) to talk about inability in the past.
نستخدم (couldn't - wasn't / weren't able to) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على القيام بشئ ما فى زمن الماضى.

1 Affirmative الاثبات →

I, He, she, It (اسم مفرد) + was + able to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

They , We, You (اسم جمع) + were + able to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. - I was able to say sorry to Fawzi.

Subject الفاعل + could + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - We could see an amazing waterfall.

Note that :

Use was/were able to with action verbs to talk about a past ability related to a single event in the past.
استخدم (was / were able to) للحديث عن القدرة فى الماضى (حدث منفرد فى الماضى)

2 Negative النفى →

I, He, She, It (اسم مفرد) + wasn't + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

They, We, You (اسم جمع) + weren't + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - Sorry mum, I wasn't able to do shopping for you.

Subject الفاعل + couldn't + inf.

ex. - They couldn't understand why I did it.

1. Yes / No question :

١. السؤال بـ(هل)

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Could + subject الفاعل + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Could you walk when you were two years old ?
- Yes, I could. - No, I couldn't.

لاحظ أن :

لاحظ أنه عند الرد على صيغة السؤال بـ «هل» نستخدم إجابات مُختصرة :

Was / Were + subject الفاعل + able to + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Was he able to swim in the pool ?
- Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.

2. Wh - question :

٢. السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word أداة استفهام + could + subject الفاعل + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - What could you do at last weekend ?

Question word أداة استفهام + was / were + subject الفاعل + able to + inf... ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - What were you able to do at primary school ?

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When I was ten, I was ..... to swim.
   a. can b. could c. able d. couldn't
2. Hala ..... go to the hospital yesterday.
   a. mustn't b. has to c. had to d. must
3. I ..... visit Ali. It wasn't necessary.
   a. don't have to b. didn't have to c. doesn't have to d. had to
4. You ..... take photos here. It's forbidden.
   a. don't have to b. have to c. must d. mustn't
5. I could walk when I was two, but I ..... swim.
   a. couldn't b. could c. can d. can't

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	الجملة تعبر عن القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي باستخدام الصيغة (be able to)
2	c	الجملة تعبر عن ضرورة في الماضي لذا نستخدم (had to)
3	b	الجملة تعبر عن عدم ضرورة في الماضي لوجود (It wasn't necessary)
4	d	الجملة تعبر عن حظر أو منع لوجود (It's forbidden)
5	a	الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة في الماضي لوجود (but) التي تربط بين جملتين متناقضتين

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB I ..... understand the film because it was in a language I don't understand.
   a. could b. couldn't c. wasn't able d. had to
2. SB Malak ..... buy more rice because we had lots already.
   a. didn't have to b. could c. had to d. wasn't able

3. WB Fatma ..... walk to school because she hurt her leg.
a. didn't have to b. wasn't able to c. could d. had to

4. WB In the mountains, we ..... see an amazing waterfall.
a. were able b. didn't have c. could d. was able to

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Adel ..... to ride a bike when he was young.
a. could b. was able c. able to d. couldn't

6. The boy couldn't ..... his homework.
a. did b. do c. done d. does

7. ..... you play basketball when you were young, Alaa ?
a. Was b. Could c. Were d. Are

8. The exam was difficult, but I ..... to answer all the questions easily.
a. could b. wasn't able to c. was able d. couldn't

9. At the age of two, my sister ..... ride a bike.
a. wasn't able b. couldn't c. weren't able to d. able

10. We ..... walk to the museum, because there wasn't a bus.
a. have to b. had to c. don't have to d. was able to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB Tarek ..... (have) to go to the dentist yesterday because his tooth hurt.
2. WB It was very windy, so planes ..... (wasn't) able to leave the airport.
3. SB I didn't have to ..... (done) what my friends suggested.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. Yesterday, I had to ..... (took) the umbrella as it was raining.
5. They ..... (are) able to ride a bike when they were young.
6. She was able ..... (catch) the ball.
7. The girl didn't ..... (has) to do what her friend said.
8. ..... (Are) your sister able to swim when she was six ?

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٢٧ و ٣٢٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

1. What was Hussein able to do the next day ?

- He was able to say sorry to Fawzi.

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. Why do you think Hussein wrote an unkind comment about Fawzi ?

- .....

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

3. What does this passage talk about ?

- .....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

1. I understand my feelings better now. ١. إننى أفهم مشاعرى جيدًا الأن.
2. When I feel angry, I play a sport. ٢. عندما أشعر بالغضب، أمارس رياضة.
3. I usually find I play better. ٣. عادة ما أقوم باللعب بشكل أفضل.
4. So my friends want me to play a game with them. ٤. لذا أصدقائى يريدون منى أن ألعب معهم.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

jokes - were - had - saw - could - have

1. Yesterday, Ali ..... to go to the dentist.
2. We ..... see an amazing waterfall.
3. They ..... not able to walk.
4. Adel always ..... and makes me laugh.
5. It is a holiday, pupils don't ..... to go to school.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

- **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :**

"Ways to relax"

.....

.....

.....

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Discussion about mindfulness : **مناقشة عن اليقظة (العقلية) :**

Questions	Answers
1. Would you like to try mindfulness ? Why / Why not ? هل تود تجربة اليقظة العقلية ؟ لماذا / لما لا ؟	- Yes, I'd like that. As this helps me feel better about myself and do better at school work. نعم. أود ذلك. لأن هذا يساعدنى فى الشعور بشكل أفضل تجاه نفسى والأداء بشكل أفضل فى الواجب الدراسى.
2. How do you think mindfulness could help you ? كيف تعتقد أن اليقظة العقلية من الممكن أن تساعدك ؟	- It could help me stop feeling anxious or worried about things. من الممكن أن تساعدنى على التوقف عن الشعور بالقلق والتوتر تجاه الأشياء.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Youssef and Tamer are talking about being mindful.

Youssef : Hello, Tamer. Why were you absent yesterday ?

Tamer : Hello, Youssef. (1) ..... .

Youssef : (2) ..... ?

Tamer : Much better, thanks.

Youssef : You missed a good lesson yesterday.

Tamer : What was it about ?

Youssef : (3) ..... .

Tamer : (4) ..... ?

Youssef : Mindfulness means being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feeling and what is around you at the moment.

Tamer : Good ! How does it help us in our life and study ?

Youssef : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She took a course to ..... her English.
   a. stop b. improve c. relax d. prove
2. I cannot believe you. You are ..... .
   a. kind b. honest c. serious d. joking
3. Yesterday, I revised ..... my English exam.
   a. for b. on c. at d. in
4. WB Your ..... health shows the health of your mind, or how happy you are.
   a. natural b. mental c. special d. normal
5. WB To ..... is to become comfortable and less worried.
   a. shout b. study c. relax d. jump
6. ..... means being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment.
   a. Environment b. Cyberbullying
   c. Brightness d. Mindfulness

7. WB To take air in and out your body means to ..... .
a. breathe b. conclude c. joke d. laugh

8. Students ..... listen to their teachers carefully.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. need

9. I will buy some bread. You ..... buy more.
a. don't have to b. shouldn't c. must d. have to

10. When I was ten, I ..... ride a horse alone. It was really amazing.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Ramez ..... (not able) fix the fan yesterday.
2. Omar ..... (must make) noise at the library.
3. Hatem ..... (can) swim, when he was four.
4. Could Laila ..... (cooks) alone when she was eleven ?

4 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

start - have - way - jacket - boat

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life (1)..... and he said I could walk carefully around the (2)....., but I couldn't run. We travelled a long (3)....., and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then, the engine stopped ! We tried to (4)..... it, but we couldn't.

5 Write an email of about 110 words to your friend Seif who lives in England about how to be mindful.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your name is Shehab and your email address is shehab15@elmoasser.com"
"Your friend's name is Seif and his email address is seiframzi@gmail. com"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 113 & 114

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

listener (n)	مستمع	meet up with (v)	يلتقى / يتقابل مع
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع الكلام	filter (n)	ملتر (معدل الصور)
cope (d) with (phr.v)	يتعامل مع - يتغلب على	clear (adj)	واضح - صاف
serious (adj)	خطير - جاد		

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 113

understanding (n)	تفاهم	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
weather (n)	الطقس	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح		

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 114

mind (ed) (v) , (n)	يمانع - يعارض - عقل	tip (n)	نصيحة
ability (n)	القدرة	brainstorm (ed) (v)	يقوم بالعصف الذهنى
digital (adj)	رقمى	mirror (n)	مرآة
word cloud (n)	سحابة الكلمات	diary (n)	مفكرة يومية
poster (n)	ملصق	contact (ed) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل بـ
display (ed) (v)	يعرض - يقدم	instead (adv)	بدلًا من

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
give	يعطى	gave	given
break	يكسر	broke	broken
mean	يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant
meet up	يلتقي - يقابل	met up	met up

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	ready	يستعد	make	sure	يتأكد
	better	يتحسن		a mistake	يخطأ
go	well	يسير بشكل جيد		questions	يكون أسئلة
do	work	يقوم بعمل	give	an example	يقدم مثال
interrupt	someone	يقاطع حديث شخص		advice	يقدم نصيحة
have	an exam	لديه امتحان	cope with	a problem	يتعامل مع مشكلة

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on lesson 5 SB page 61

Narrator : Conversation 1

Boy 1 : My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really depressed[1] about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2 : Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway. You can find new friends.

Narrator : Conversation 2

Boy 3 : What's wrong, Khaled ?

Boy 4 : I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3 : Tell me about it. What happened ?

Boy 4 : I heard some bad news yesterday..

Boy 3 : Go on .... It might help to talk about it, you know.

Narrator : Conversation 3

Girl 1 : I think I'm going to fail my exams.[2]

Girl 2 : Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly too.

Girl 1 : But I really want to get good results. I want to go to university and study medicine.[3]

Check Vocabulary

(1) مكتئب | (2) أفشل فى أختباراتى | (3) يدرس الطب

Girl 2 : I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America ... ?

Narrator : Conversation 4

Girl 3 : I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4 : I see. What makes you say that ?

Girl 3 : She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know.

Girl 4 : It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of what you mean ?

Girl 3 : She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4 : That must make you feel very sad.

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Mazin : I had a terrible(1) day at school.

Mother : Tell me about it. What happened ?(2)

Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...

Mother : Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mazin : We had a test and I was last(3) in the class !

Mother : That must make you feel very sad.

Mazin : It was so difficult.

Mother : Can you give me an example of what you mean(4) ?

Mazin : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.

Mother : It's clear you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the teacher ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) فظيع - شنيع | (2) ماذا حدث ؟ | (3) الأخير | (4) يعني - يقصد

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

Dalia gets ready for school. She can hear her parents talking to her older brother. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He does not look happy and this makes her feel even worse.

Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.

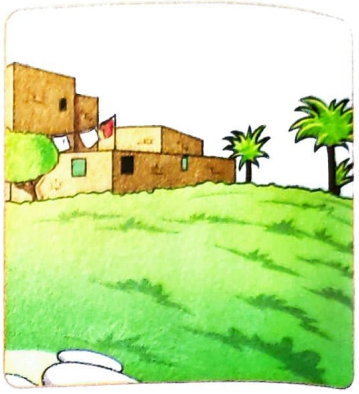
The first lesson at school is science Dalia works hard and does some good work.

The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder ?

Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114



Taha's friends all live near[1] to their school. When they have finished their homework,the friends all meet up[2] to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work[3], too. Taha lives a long way from[4] the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small village[5]. He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill[6]. So, when he gets home, he has to look after his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قريب	(2) يلتقى - يتقابل	(3) الواجب الدراسى	(4) بعيدا عن	(5) قرية	(6) مريض

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

Hi friends,

I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will continue[1] to feel lonely[2] and upset. This will not help her. So, first of all, it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her feelings. Then, we will know how best to support[3] her.

Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher ? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is worried about her brother. I think this might[4] help.

Finally, I think we should tell her that we are proud[5] to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can relax[6] after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree?[7] Email[8] and let me know.

Best wishes, Riham.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يستمر	(2) وحيد - منعزل	(3) يدعم - يساند	(4) ربما	(5) فخور
(6) يسترخى	(7) يوافق	(8) يرسل رسالة بريد إلكترونى	(9) أطيب التمنيات	

on Lesson 7 SB page 63

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy about her appearance[1]. How can I help her feel more positive about herself ? People like her and she has won prizes for her art; the only negative thing about her is her opinion[2] of herself. It's really bad for her mental health.

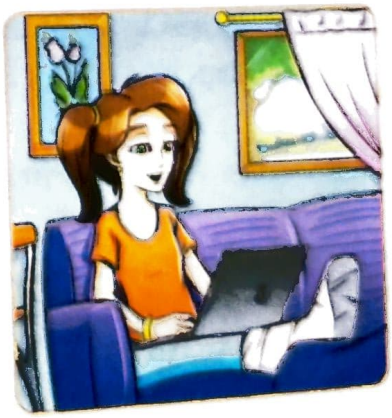
I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful achievement[3]. I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm embarassed[4] to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a secret[5]. My parents know I feel a bit[6] lonely but they don't know why.

It can be upset being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability[7]. Try to breathe in and out calmly, and then talk to people. Nobody minds when people make mistakes ![8]

Check Vocabulary

(1) مظهر	(2) رأى	(3) انجازات	(4) محرج
(5) سر	(6) إلى حد ما	(7) قدرة	(8) يرتكب أخطاء

on Lesson 7 WB page 115



Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, she had to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She was able to go home the next day, but she wasn't able to walk for many weeks. She could go to school, but of course she couldn't do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she didn't have to do any housework, either. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she was able to play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better !

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 clear

* clear (adj) — واضح - صاف

ex.:- It was clear to me that Ali was a liar كذاب.

- In spring, you can see the sky clear and blue.

* clear (ed) (v) — ينظف - يزيل المخلفات

ex.:- I had to clear my desk before I left.

2 without + اسم / (inf. + ing) — بدون

ex.:- Without sleep, we wouldn't be able to work the next day.

ex.:- SB Listen without interrupting me.

3 help مفعول به + (inf.) — يساعد

ex.:- SB Try to help me explain my feelings more clearly.

4 make مفعول به + inf. المصدر — (يجعل)

ex.: SB His cruel words made her feel sad.

5 any more = no more — لم (أعد)

* any more — تستخدم دائمًا مع فعل منفى بـ (not)

ex.:- WB She isn't worried about being ill any more.

* no more — تستخدم لتدل على النفى مع بقاء الفعل قبلها مثبتًا

- She is no more worried about being ill.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

tell me what to do	أخبرنى ماذا أفعل ...	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
talk about	يتحدث عن	unhappy about	حزين بشأن
without interrupting me	دون مقاطعتى	in the mirror	فى المرآة
It is clear to me that ...	إنه من الواضح بالنسبة لى أن ...	do more good work	يعمل مزيد من العمل الجيد
		look so good	يبدو جذاب جيدًا

make coffee for	يعد / يصنع القهوة لـ	do something else	يعمل شئ آخر
make you feel ...	يجعلك تشعر ...	agree on	يتفق على
(have) a terrible day	يقضى يومًا سيئ	first of all	أولًا / قبل كل شئ
go on	يستمر	help with	يساعد فى

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. He is a good ..... . He always listens to me carefully.
   a. speaker b. player c. listener d. fighter
2. People use ..... to look so good in their pictures.
   a. skills b. filters c. notes d. medicines
3. You're strong. You can ..... with any problem.
   a. find b. make c. cope d. add
4. Coronavirus is a ..... disease.
   a. clear b. simple c. digital d. serious
5. Will you ..... up with your friends today?
   a. make b. meet c. wake d. get

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB Ask questions to ..... sure you really understand the problem.
   a. give b. have c. make d. do
7. SB Before leaving for school, she looks at herself in the ..... .
   a. wall b. mirror c. video game d. basin
8. SB How can she ..... him to work harder ?
   a. take b. do c. know d. encourage
9. WB Young children are not good listeners because they often ..... !
   a. eat b. interrupt c. encourage d. listen

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You should think ..... before taking an important decision.
    a. clearly b. happily c. angrily d. really
11. Did you see the ..... of the new film on the cinema door ?
    a. video b. advice c. comment d. poster

12. You should listen to your big brother's .....
a. taps b. tapes c. tips d. lips

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Try ..... me. I'm really in a mess فى ورطة !
a. helping b. help c. to help d. helped

14. You can't succeed without ..... hard.
a. working b. to work c. work d. works

15. Do you agree ..... what I say ?
a. of b. to c. up d. on

16. No, thanks. I don't want rice ..... .
a. any more b. some more c. no more d. much

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
ask يسأل	question / inquire	tell / answer يخبر / يجيب
older أكبر سنًا	elder	younger أصغر سنًا

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
– er	يحول فعل إلى اسم فاعل	listener مستمع poster ملصق
– ing	يحول فعل إلى اسم / صفة	understanding متفهم / تفاهم

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The antonym of the word "older" is ..... .
a. ancient b. elder c. younger d. early

2. "Ask" and "question" have ..... meaning.
a. opposite b. different c. similar d. the same

3. We turn the verb "listen" to a noun by adding "..... ".
a. - er b. - ing c. - ed d. - tion

4. They may be more understanding. The word "understanding" here is a/an
a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. noun

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 62 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٤٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think Dalia doesn't tell her friends about her worries ?
- Because she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. How does Dalia feel about her appearance ?
- .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

3. The word **"older"** in the first paragraph is the opposite of .....
a. smarter b. lighter c. quieter d. younger

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

"A day at school" يوم فى المدرسة

1. I had a terrible day at school. ١. قضيت يوم سئ فى المدرسة.
2. There was a maths class. ٢. كانت هناك حصة لمادة الرياضيات.
3. We had a test and I was last in the class. ٣. كان هناك امتحان وكنت المركز الأخير فى الفصل.
4. I felt very sad as the test was very difficult. ٤. شعرت بحزن شديد لأن الامتحان كان صعب جدًا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

have to - able - keep - Do - shouldn't - Could

1. Sorry mum, I wasn't ..... to do your shopping.
2. ..... Hoda walk when she was two ?
3. You ..... eat too much crisps.
4. We must ..... our passwords secret.
5. Pupils ..... go to school on time.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"A terrible day"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Expressions the speaker use to show that they are listening :

تعبيرات يستخدمها المتحدث ليوضح أنه يصغى جيدًا :

- Tell me about it. What happened ? — اخبرى عن هذا الأمر . ماذا حدث ؟
- Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know. — استمر فى الحديث. ربما يساعدك الحديث عن هذا الأمر الذى تعرفه.
- I see. What makes you say that ? — افهم. ما الذى جعلك تقول هذا ؟
- It's clear you are unhappy about it. — من الواضح أنك غير سعيد عن هذا الأمر.
- That must make you feel very sad. — من المؤكد أن هذا يجعلك تشعر بالحزن.
- Can you give me an example of what you mean ? — هل يمكنك إعطائى مثال عن الأمر الذى تقصده ؟

2. A good listener :

المستمع الجيد :

A good listener :	A good listener doesn't :
1. gives me advice but only if I ask for it. يقدم النصيحة لى ولكن عندما أطلب منه ذلك.	1. Tell me what to do. لا يخبرنى بما أفعل.
2. listens without interrupting me. يستمع لى بدون مقاطعتى فى الحديث.	2. Tries to talk about something else. يحاول التحدث عن شىء آخر.
3. looks interested in what I am saying. يبدو مهتمًا بما أقول.	3. Tells me about their own problems. لا يخبرنى بمشاكله الخاصة.
4. asks questions to make sure they really understand the problem. يسأل أسئلة ليتأكد من استيعابه للمشكلة.	4. Tells me everything is OK and my problem isn't serious. يخبرنى أن كل شىء على ما يرام وأن مشكلتى ليست خطيرة.
5. shows that they are listening. يوضح أنه يصغى إلىَّ.	
6. tries to help me explain my feelings more clearly. يحاول أن يساعدنى لتوضيح مشاعرى بأكثر وضوحًا.	

Self Assessment Activity

قيم نفسك.

- ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- فى حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة **Review** لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Maher asks his teacher, Mr Othman how to be a good listener.

Maher : Hello, Mr Othman. Can I ask you a question, please ?

Mr Othman : Hello, Maher. (1) ..... .

Maher : (2) ..... ?

Mr Othman : If you want to be a good listener, you shouldn't interrupt the speaker.

Maher : It's OK. I won't interrupt the speaker. (3) ..... ?

Mr Othman : You should also show that you are interested in the subject.

Maher : What should I do if the speaker said something wrong ? Can I give advice ?

Mr Othman : (4) ..... . But, don't give orders.

Maher : Thanks for your time, Mr Othman

Mr Othman : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Nobody minds when people ..... mistakes !
   a. do b. make c. take d. gave
2. After she had the medicine, she ..... better a lot.
   a. had b. got c. gave d. made
3. Have you finished or you will ..... something else ?
   a. do b. go c. talk d. make
4. Did you get ready ..... the final exam ?
   a. from b. of c. for d. at
5. Before leaving your exam paper, you should ..... sure that you had answered all the questions.
   a. give b. forget c. do d. make

6. Can you ..... some advice about how to solve this problem ?

a. pretend b. attend c. give d. take

7. It's not good to ..... at yourself at the mirror for a long time.

a. see b. look c. watch d. notice

8. When Rana was nine, she ..... to speak two languages well.

a. is able to b. wasn't able to c. is able d. was able

9. You don't have any money to buy a present for your mum. You ..... save some money.

a. mustn't b. had to c. have to d. shouldn't

10. WB She ..... go to hospital after she broke her leg.

a. has to b. must c. had to d. should

3 WB Complete the sentences with these words :

look - a - takes - get - worried

Taha lives a long way from the school. It (1)..... an hour for him to (2)..... home to his small village. He does not have a father and he is (3)..... because his mother is ill. So, when he gets home, he has to (4)..... after his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

4 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A good listener"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

ممتاز
جيد جداً
جيد
غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to .... فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ mindfulness
- ☐ embarrassed
- ☐ cyberbully
- ☐ negative
- ☐ teenagers
- ☐ anxious
- ☐ disappoint
- ☐ empathy

2 Read and write sentences using (must / had to / should / shouldn't have to / could / was – were able to / might) :

(must / had to / should / shouldn't / have to / could / was / were able to / might) اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام

- ☐ They were able to count to ten when they were young.
- ☐ You mustn't make noise in the library.
- ☐ Pupils don't have to go to school on Fridays.
- ☐ You should get up early and shouldn't stay up late.

3 Talk about teenagers' worries and suggesting solutions to problems :

اتحدث عن مشكلات المراهقين واقتراح حلول للمشاكل :

- ☐ **A :** What are teenagers worries and problems ?
- ☐ **B :** They are worried about ..... .
- ☐ **A :** What should we do to help them ?
- ☐ **B :** We could use ..... .

لمزيد من التدريبات

Master your term جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر

جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review on unit 6

SB page 63 WB page 115

Vocabulary

teenagers	مراهقين
anxious	قلق
embarrassed	محرج
positive	إيجابى
negative	سلبى
upset	منزعج
support	يدعم
mental health	الصحة العقلية
disappointed	محبط
sort of	نوع من
realise	يُدرك
cyberbully	يتنمر عبر الانترنت
mindfulness	اليقظة
interrupt	يقاطع
serious	خطير - جاد
empathy	عاطفة
cope with	يتكيف مع
interests	اهتمامات
breathe	يتنفس

Language

(must - mustn't) (have to - don't have to)

must + inf. المصدر — يجب للتعبير عن الإلزام والضرورة

ex.: - Friends must keep secrets.

mustn't + inf. — لا يجب للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم

ex.: - You mustn't interrupt someone's speech.

have to + inf. — عندما يكون الشىء ضرورى

ex.: - I have to be good at science subject.

don't have to + inf. — عندما يكون الشىء غير ضرورى

ex.: - They don't have to go to work on Fridays.

should / shouldn't + inf. المصدر

للتعبير عن النصيحة بعمل أو عدم عمل شىء

ex.: - You should't drink water from the canal.

was / were able to + inf. المصدر

للتعبير عن القدرة فى الماضى

ex.: - I was able to say sorry to Ali.

could / couldn't + inf. المصدر

للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى الماضى

ex.: - I could read when I was six.

ex.: - She couldn't stand on one leg.

Speaking

(1) Discussing teenagers' worries and their problems :

مناقشة قلق الشباب ومشاكلهم

- What are teenagers worried about ?
- They are worried about ...
- What could we do to help them?
- We could help ...

(2) Expressions the speaker use to show that you are listening :

تعبيرات يستخدمها المتحدث ليوضح انه يصف جيداً

(A) : I've got a problem.
(B) : Tell me about it.
(A) : I broke my new phone.
(B) : Don't worry. We can find someone to repair it.

(3) Suggesting solutions to problems :

اقتراح حلول للمشكلات

- Could you use social media or technology to help them ?

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph on

➲ Teenagers' problems / Ways to relax / Using technology to solve problems / The advantages and disadvantages of social media

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What do you think most teenagers worry about ?
- What can they do to cope with their problems ?
- How could you use technology in a positive way ?
- What must you do to be a good listener ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- technology	- anxious	- mindfulness
- social media	- embarrassed	- cyberbully
- positive	- upset	- example
- negative	- empathy	- social life
- relax	- mental health	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I'd like to listen to music.	- Most teenagers worry about ..... .
- It's clear you're unhappy about it.	- Using social media can help ..... .
- I decided to cope with	- We had to ..... .

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

➲ Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"Teenagers' problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) فى كل وحدة والتى تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالملهج.

unit 6

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

embarrassed	مرتبك / متحير	realise	يدرك
anxious	قلق	cyberbully	التنمر عبر الإنترنت
negative	سلبى	mindfulness	اليقظة
positive	إيجابى	interrupt	يقاطع (الحديث)
fail	يفشل	serious	خطير /جاد
mental health	الصحة العقلية	social life	الحياة الاجتماعية
support	يدعم	secret	سر

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. You mustn't(1) talk in class.
2. A good friend must(2) keep secrets.
3. Samy had to(3) go to the doctor.
4. He was able to(4) carry the heavy box.
5. They couldn't(5) answer the questions.
6. You should study(6) your lessons.

Check Language

(1)	تستخدم للمنع والتحريم وبعدها المصدر
(2)	تعبر must عن الألزام وبعدها مصدر الفعل
(3)	تستخدم had to للتعبير عن حدث ضرورى فى الماضى
(4)	تستخدم (was/were) able to للتعبير عن القدرة فى الماضى
(5)	تستخدم couldn't للتعبير عن عدم القدرة فى الماضى
(6)	تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة والفعل بعدها فى المصدر

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Suggesting solutions to problems

Questions	Answers
1. Who could you talk to for help ?	- We could talk to .....
2. What could you do to help ?	- We could help by .....
3. Could you use social media or technology to help ?	- Good idea , but ..... .

General Exercises on unit 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Salem is angry because he can't find his pen after the English lesson.

Usama : What's the matter, Salem ?

Salem : (1) ..... .

Usama : Have you looked for it in your bag ?

Salem : (2) ..... . It isn't there.

Usama : Don't worry. (3) ..... .

Salem : It isn't under the desk. I looked for it there.

Usama : (4) ..... ?

Salem : No, I didn't look for it in my English book.

Usama : (5) ..... ?

Salem : It's on the bookshelf.

2 SB Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I always wanted to be part of a certain group of popular students. One day, they suggested that we cyberbully a boy in my class called Fawzi, so I wrote an unkind comment about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think **it** was funny. I didn't realise that they were joking and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Fawzi read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include me in their group. I am so embarrassed about what I did.

However, I hope my experience will have a positive result, too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry to Fawzi the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully and always be kind to people.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Explain why Fawzi didn't want to come to school. Mention two points.

.....

2. Infer why the writer was embarrassed about what he had done. Give two reasons.

.....

3. Do you think we shouldn't send bad online messages ? Why/Why not ? Mention two reasons.

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The best title for the passage is ..... .

a. friendship b. messages
c. cyberbullying d. think before you react

5. The writer thought that his friends would ..... when they read his message.

a. cry b. fight c. laugh d. shout

6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .

a. Fawzi b. comment c. media d. class

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB The review of the book has nothing ..... to say about it. It sounds great.

a. negative b. positive c. good d. helpful

2. WB My grandmother always ..... and makes us laugh when we visit her.

a. tells b. shouts c. cries d. jokes

3. You should tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to ..... you online.

a. cyberbully b. support c. encourage d. help

4. She ..... better after taking her medicine.

a. failed b. felt c. passed d. succeeded

5. Open the window, please. I cannot ..... .
   a. sing b. breathe c. eat d. hear
6. When you make a mistake, you should ..... sorry.
   a. tell b. talk c. speak d. say
7. Don't ..... me again. It's impolite of you.
   a. help b. encourage c. interrupt d. revise
8. Yesterday, we ..... to walk to school because my uncle drove us there.
   a. didn't have to b. had to c. must d. should
9. ..... when you were five ?
   a. What you could do b. What could you do
   c. What you can do d. What can you do
10. ..... Hend able to ride a bike when she was six ?
   a. Is b. Can c. Could d. Was

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (be) you able to speak two languages at the age of ten ?
2. Wael ..... (have to) sleep early yesterday.
3. Manar ..... (not have to) make breakfast. Mum prepares it.
4. ..... (can) she go to school alone when she was at primary one ?

5 Complete the sentences with these words :

find – walk – go – broke – do

Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months later, she had to go to hospital after she (1)..... her leg. She was able to (2)..... home the next day but she wasn't able to (3)..... for many weeks. She could go to school, but of course she couldn't (4)..... any sports until her leg was better.

6 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"What we should do to be good listeners"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 6 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and match :

A	B
1. To "support" means	a. ☐ makes us laugh when we visit him.
2. My grandfather always jokes and	b. ☐ but you mustn't tell anyone !
3. He feels anxious because	c. ☐ something important that you have done.
4. Tarek had to go to the dentist	d. ☐ to help and encourage someone.
5. I tell you a secret,	e. ☐ because his teeth hurt.
	f. ☐ he has an important exam tomorrow.

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Say** me about it. What happened ? (.....)
2. It's **serious** to me that Ahmed is very good at running. (.....)
3. In the mountains, we **were able** see an amazing waterfall. (.....)
4. I **have** to get up early tomorrow because it is a holiday ! (.....)

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is a person who is between 13 and 19 years old.
   a. adult b. teenager c. baby d. grown up
2. She feels ..... as her parents were died.
   a. lonely b. lunar c. loneliness d. loan
3. I ..... a bedroom with my brother.
   a. divide b. share c. contain d. include
4. Always take a deep ..... to relax well.
   a. breathe b. breathing c. breath d. breathed
5. He is ..... worried about being ill.
   a. more b. any more c. no more d. once more

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian Paralympic swimmer[1] with an incredible[2] list[3] of achievements[4]. She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in national competitions[5] When she was 16, Aya became the first and youngest Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games[6]. Aya had to face[7] many challenges[8] in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or equal opportunities[9] for disabled[10] people. Aya was able to achieve[11] her goals[12] with the support[13] of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive[14] for young disabled athletes[15].

Aya is now a member[16] of the Egyptian Paralympic team. Although she has a busy life as a university student, she is also a campaigner[17] for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training[18] since her last event. She is a true role model[19] for all Egyptians!

Check Vocabulary

(1) سباح من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	(2) مذهل / مدهش	(3) قائمة	(4) انجازات	(5) مسابقات قومية
(6) دورة الالعاب البارالمبية	(7) يواجه	(8) تحديات	(9) فرص متساوية	(10) المعاقيين / ذو الهمم
(11) ينجز/يحقق	(12) أهداف	(13) مساندة	(14) ايجابى	(15) رياضيون
(16) عضو	(17) مناضل	(18) تدريب	(19) نموذج يحتذى به	

• on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Police in Australia have found a man who was lost in the desert for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, has driven from his hotel in the morning of January 2nd. He was not able to move his car after he went down a small farm road(1). He tried to walk back to(2) his hotel, but he couldn't remember the way. For many days, Robert had to drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. Nearly(3) three weeks later, a man has found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

'Robert has already drunk lots of water and feels better(4) now, but he hasn't slept much yet', said a police officer. 'Remember that you must tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert', he said. 'You don't have to drive along(5) small roads either. They are not always safe'.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يسلك طريق المزرعة الصغيرة | (2) يعود إلى (سيرًا على الأقدام) | (3) تقريبًا | (4) يشعر بتحسن | (5) يقود على امتداد

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Narrator : Conversation 1

Ola : What's wrong, Lina ? Has something bad happened ? You look really unhappy.

Lina : It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious(1), that's all.

Ola : Tell me about it. What are you anxious about ?

Lina : Well, you know it's the national maths competition(2) soon.

Ola : Yes. Go on.

Lina : I've revised(3) for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

Ola : I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher ? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

Lina : Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.

Narrator : Conversation 2

Hany : Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK ?

Tamer : Well...

Check Vocabulary

(1) قلق قليلاً | (2) المسابقة القومية للرياضيات | (3) يراجع

B

Hany : I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it ?
Tamer: I'm too embarrassed to talk about it, Hany. I'm afraid I've done something wrong.
Hany : Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.
Tamer: One of my school friends told me a secret(4), and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.
Hany : I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there anything you can do ?
Tamer: I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.
Hany : You could try sending him an email ? It's often easier to write about how you feel than to talk about it.
Tamer: Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.

Check Vocabulary

(4) سر

on Lesson 2 WB page 117

Conversation 1

Wael : Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet ?
Ziad : No, it hasn't Wael.
Wael : How long have you been here ?
Ziad : I've been here for twenty minutes.
Wael : The bus is very late. Shall we walk ?
Ziad : Good idea.

Conversation 2

Nawal : Hi Marwa. How are you ?
Marwa : Hi Nawal. I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.
Nawal : Have you arrived at the hotel yet ?
Marwa : No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.
Nawal : So you're at the train station ?
Marwa : No, we haven't left the airport yet.

Conversation 3

Mother : Hi, Hisham. Have you done well ?
Hisham : Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.
Mother : Well done! What an amazing achievement! Have you got a medal ?
Hisham : No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!
Mother : I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

GENERAL Revision

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات (٤ ، ٥ و ٦)

Based on Units 4 , 5 & 6

Mini-Test on Unit 4

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Tom used beautiful colours to ..... the fence.
   a. paint b. spend c. pretend d. trick
2. ..... means to walk or drive behind someone.
   a. Feed b. Follow c. Feel d. Drop
3. The field had a long ..... to stop the sheep from leaving or escaping.
   a. fence b. fountain c. tap d. tree
4. The boy ..... he was enjoying the work. He thought he could trick them.
   a. turned b. pretended
   c. protected d. printed
5. Scientists often ..... new and exciting things about space.
   a. discover b. drop c. fail d. ring
6. They haven't seen their uncle since they ..... young.
   a. are b. were c. have d. was

2. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Last Friday, the boy ..... (win) a prize.
2. Sama ..... (have) finished her homework.
3. The doctor has been in this hospital ..... (for) 2005.
4. Has she ..... (never) seen a lion ?

3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"What you do on holidays "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 5

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Abdullah about his favourite footballer.

Ali : Hello Abdullah, what's your favourite sport ?

Abdullah : (1) ..... .

Ali : (2) ..... ?

Abdullah : My favourite footballer is Mo Salah.

Ali : (3) ..... ?

Abdullah : He plays for Liverpool.

Ali : Why do people like him ?

Abdullah : (4) ..... .

Ali : Does he score many goals ?

Abdullah : (5) ..... .

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He is the ..... of a team of people and they have meetings every day.
   a. student b. manager c. servant d. cleaner
2. He ..... working for the company three years ago.
   a. started b. looked c. made d. spent
3. Samar travelled to the USA to ..... the award.
   a. sweep b. receive c. dry d. drop
4. She also gives speeches to other young engineers to help them ..... their goals.
   a. feed b. need c. steal d. achieve
5. A ..... is someone who works with maths.
   a. mathematician b. nurse
   c. vet d. volunteer
6. He hasn't received his job ..... .
   a. never b. yet c. for d. since

3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"A creative person"

.....

.....

.....

.....

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 6

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... is something important that you have done.
   a. Achievement b. Addiction
   c. Appearance d. Attention
2. The review of the book has nothing ..... to say about it. It sounds great.
   a. positive b. negative c. ugly d. wasting
3. My grandmother always ..... and makes us laugh when we visit her.
   a. jokes b. fixes c. cooks d. drops
4. You must tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to ..... you online.
   a. cyberbully b. phone
   c. drive d. pick
5. Tarek doesn't want to go to Canada. He can't ..... cold weather.
   a. talk with b. cope with
   c. interrupt d. make up
6. You ..... make noise at the hospital.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You ..... (shouldn't) study your lessons.
2. They ..... (has) to go to school early.
3. ..... (Were) Hoda able to run fast when she was young ?
4. He didn't ..... (had) to see a doctor.

3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"What you didn't have to do at primary school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Answers of Main Book Topics إجابات موضوعات كتاب الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Ismailia is an interesting city"

Egypt has a lot of interesting places in all of its parts. Ismailia is one of Egypt's beautiful governorates. Although Ismailia does not have many historical sites, it has a lot of green areas. Everyone describes the green areas of Ismailia as "places of comfort". A lot of families go to Ismailia to spend their holidays. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. The best thing about Ismailia is its calmness. The city has little pollution, no factories and a little of traffic. The weather there is fine; not hot or cold most of the year. There are lots of things you can do in Ismailia, you can sit on beaches, go swimming and enjoy some water sports.

To conclude, I advise all people who want to have fun and enjoy their time to visit Ismailia. You will never get bored !

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : mazen2004@gmail.com
To : heshamprince@gmail.com
Subject : new Egyptian cities

Dear Hesham,

How are you ? I miss you so much ! Isn't it the time for coming back ? You've gone to Tunisia for a long time and nearly you've forgotten all your friends. What I want to say that our great country has changed a lot. A lot of fantastic new cities have been built, so we can enjoy our time together visiting those new Egyptian cities. We can visit the New Administrative Capital, AL Fatah EL Aleem Mosque or go to Hurghada. The new school year starts soon and I hope you come back before it. I miss our days. Please, contact and tell me what you're going to do. See you soon.

Yours,
Mazen

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : alaa22@gmail.com
To : sara26@yahoo.com
Subject : invitation to the exhibition

Dear Sara,

How are you ? I miss you so much ! At first, I write this email to tell you that my family always ask me about you. They've been in love with you since you met them on last year's holiday. Second, I'd like to invite you to visit the exhibition with my family. It's a good chance to have fun and let all my family see you. The new exhibition has a lot of art works and I know you love the works of art and have too much knowledge about galleries. All my relatives who have recently visited the exhibition say that it has a fantastic collection of paintings and drawings. Those works were made by famous artists. I want you not to skip this. With my best wishes.

Yours,

Alaa

General Exercises on unit 1

"What you do on one day of the week"

In fact, I have too many tasks to do during the week. On last Friday, I had an idea. I wanted to visit my mother's oldest aunt. She is a very kind person. I remembered staying with her when I was young. She always talked to me and told me interesting stories about my father and mother. What I love and make me remember her from time to time is that she has a very good quality. I cannot find today with a lot of people; she has a very wide chest and can answer to all my questions. She never gets bored. I think this was the thing that made me want to visit her last week. We had good time and again she told me exciting and new stories.

I think I will never forget her and I want to visit her more and more.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : seifsalah@almoasser.com
To : john17@gmail.com
Subject : Egyptian tourist attractions

Dear John,

How are you ? You asked me before about Egypt and its history. I remember you asked me about what places you can visit in it, too. Egypt has a lot of tourist attractions. Egypt also has worldwide tourist cities. We have Sharm El-Shiekh and Hurghada and they are visited by millions of people every year. We have beaches you will never find in other places. We have hotels with good quality. I can't say that our water sports activities are rare, but I can say the nature and its beauty we have is rare. We have great historical museums and temples in Luxor and Aswan. All I mentioned above is few ! But when you visit Egypt, you'll learn more and more. I hope to see you soon.

Yours,
Seif

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Something I bought online"

Everything in life; big or small, old or new has positive sides and negative sides as well ! No one can deny that online shopping has become more and more popular nowadays. Many people prefer it because it is easier and quicker than traditional shopping. As I am interested in music and it is my favourite hobby, I decided to buy a piano ! A friend of mine told me that there is a very good online website for a music shop whose fame is fantastic. When I saw their goods and the musical instruments they displayed, I was astonished by some pianos they offered, so I ordered one. In fact, the piano arrived one day after the order. But when I opened it, I found out it was broken ! Of course, I was angry and I made a complaint. I learned that things have advantages and disadvantages !

General Exercises on unit 2

"The best and worst items of technology in my house"

Technology has become a symbol of progress especially at our homes. Of course technology has changed our life and it is a must to use it in modern life. Smart TV sets, mobile phones and laptop computers are almost in all of our homes. And as it is always said, "For every plus, there is a minus !" These technological devices have made our life easier and more enjoyable. On one hand, they tell us about what happens in our world, make us watch football matches all over the world and follow our likes by an easy and quick way. But on the other hand, they have made us lazy, feel bored most of the time and somehow away from our real life ! People look at those screens more than they look at themselves ! Even children have become busy playing online games and watching videos. Isn't that strange ?

Unit 3

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"What I can do to help people in my community"

A man who is living for just himself or herself is not living ! I think our community is a part of our life and it is a must to cooperate for it and for solving the problems it suffers from. At my school, there are some students who have disabilities at different parts of their bodies. Some can't move, well others can't

see well. I thought and thought about them and at last I had an idea for helping them. I went to the school headmaster and suggested a way to lighten the burdens of them and their parents for coming at school. I suggested all students in all classes at school should donate money for building a special area for them and making special roads without stairs for them. The headmaster welcomed my idea and thanked me and promised that he will work for it. Isn't that a small help for our community ?

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : aymanking@gmail.com
From : mahmoudhero@elmoasser.com
Subject : some community problems
Dear Ayman,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this email to tell you some problems in my community. I have some friends who suffer from the absence of thought and aim. They do not do well at their study and school work. They do not have real goals to achieve. All they want to sing songs and play games everyday. They never study and their parents do not know what to do. I think it is a problem at our community that we should find a solution to it. Don't you have any suggestions ? Please, write to me if you have any solutions. Waiting for your reply ! With my best wishes.

Yours,
Mahmoud

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A message to a social network service page about a community project"

We all love our community and want to give services to help improve it. I and some of my friends decided to meet to discuss how to do a project to help our community. At our meeting, we decided to start a local charity, where people can donate food to families who need it. We got some ideas from a network for our project. Everyone in our community who can offer food to help in this aim should be cooperative and helpful. We can design pages on the internet, call for anyone who can help us. Social work is a great issue that deserves to start working on it. We need volunteers to help us plan and complete this project. Please, we should not neglect that to be a developed country and improve our community.

General Exercises on unit 3

"A person who made a difference in my community"

As I was young, I had little experience in life. I had a lot of problems and I could not find solutions for most of them. I wasted too much time of my life and regretted that. One day, I met a friend who was older than me. His name is Helmi. Really, he is a great person. He listened to all my problems carefully and told me about some of his own problems which were a lot greater than mine. The strange thing that he faced all his problems with great satisfaction and told me he always said Thanks God. He told me that the strong man is the person who can face and overcome, not to give up. At last, he could solve all his problems by working hard. I learned from him that the hard work is the only key to solve any problem. From this time and I kept Helmi's advice in my mind and I worked harder and harder and I've never forgotten his advice.

Unit 4

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My experiences"

Have you ever climbed a mountain ? Have you ever eaten a snake ? In fact, everyone in life has their own special

experiences who will never forget. My first experience that I will never forget is when a friend of mine invited me to have lunch at his house. This friend lives in Marsa Matrouh. I travelled and had a very delicious meal. It was grilled meat and I was very happy with the food. When I finished, I asked him what kind of meat that we had. To my surprise, he told me it was meat of a snake ! I told him how come ! After that I knew it is easy to have snakes for meals at Matrouh. Another experience is when I travelled in a truck and an officer on the road stopped me and took me to the police station. He thought I was a criminal. After my parents came, I was set free. To conclude, everyone has some experiences which sometimes he or she may learn from or experience itself may teach him or her.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : omarhedar@gmail.com
From : adelmunir@elmoasser.com
Subject : a day I spent at the Pyramids

Dear Omar,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. Last week, our school went on a trip to the Pyramids. It was my first time to visit and see the Pyramids. I spent a very beautiful day there. I enjoyed riding a camel and a horse. There were a lot of tourists from all over the world. I spoke with them in English. Our great ancient Egyptians were really great builders and engineers. I knew that they built the Pyramids at first as tombs for themselves. I'd like to invite you to come to Giza and visit them. Really, you will enjoy and learn a lot of things. I hope to see you soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,

Adel

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Things that I have achieved"

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was young, I had a dream to be the best student in English, because I love my English teacher and he always encourages me. I wanted to be perfect in English like him. After school, I always saved my pocket money to buy English books of higher levels than I'm in. I always go home and finish my study, then I read these books, write my notes and talk to myself in English. I've learnt all about grammar, vocabulary and writing paragraphs. In monthly tests at school, I always get the full mark. My class teacher asked me to talk in English in the morning school broadcasting. All my friends admired me and told me that I'm the best in English. I've got the full mark in English in all my study years and I've decided to be an English teacher when I grow up.

General Exercises on unit 4

"A happy event that happened to me recently"

I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields, on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of five or six large dogs in front of me. I wasn't afraid at all. When the dogs got nearer to me, I wasn't afraid and I was standstill. After a minute, the dogs moved away. To my surprise, I was being watched by the field owner. He asked a worker to come and asked me to go to him. When I met him, he was happy that I was brave and gave me some beautiful presents for both my parents and me.

Unit 5

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My role model"

Samar Abdelfattah is my role model. As a young child, Samar wanted to be an astronaut. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering. While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Students had to design a new form of transport that travels above the ground. It is called "hyperloop". Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from university to join her team. Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samer's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East that worked hard on the design and won the competition. Samar travelled to America to receive the award. I really admire her.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : monasaleh@gmail.com
From : rehammagdi@elmoasser.com
Subject : the importance of helping other people

Dear Mona,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. I'd like to tell you that yesterday evening, I was travelling on a train from Aswan to Cairo. One of the passengers suddenly fainted and fell on the aisle of the train. People got worried and asked the train inspector to come. He thought that the passenger was in great danger. Luckily, one of the passenger on another carriage came to help. He wasn't a doctor but he had an idea of first aid. He put his hands on the man's chest and began to press hard. After some time, the man opened his eyes and got better. Without helping others, many bad things would have happened.

Yours,
Reham

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A famous person"

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. She learned more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. She came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge. She became very famous when she found a natural way for villages to clean the dirty water. The project can also help to stop pollution. In 2021, Fatma's project won fourth place in the society's international Science and Engineering Fair. She became very famous not only in Egypt but all over the world as well. Now, she wants to do more things to help her country. I admire Fatma and all her achievements.

General Exercises on unit 5

"A biography about a person I admire"

Mohamed Salah is the person who I admire most. He was born in a village in Gharbia. He is polite and hardworking. He has played for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scored many goals for our team. He played for Roma Team. Now, he plays for Liverpool in England and scored many goals. Liverpool is a very good team. I like the way by which they play. Players are so active and present great shows and good results. This happened after Salah's joining to them. Salah added much speed to the team. Salah has got a lot of important awards in Africa and Europe.

Unit 6

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Social media in our life"

Technology is very important in our life. It has made life easier. An important type of modern technological developments is the social media and its role in our life. Of course no one can deny the role that the social media plays in our daily life. We can get the local and the global news almost at no time thanks to social media. It is also a comfortable way to communicate with each other either on the local level or the world wide level. If one of our relatives succeeded, the first thing that tells us this piece of news is the social media. But it is said that for every plus, there is a minus. Social media can waste our time if we became addicted to it. It offers great ways to attract our attention and make us away from our main tasks. If we are not careful, we may go with it to distant areas that return to us with negative sides.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : seiframzi@gmail.com
From : shehab15@elmoasser.com
Subject : being mindful
Dear Seif,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. I heard that you're somehow anxious about your schoolwork. I'd like to advise you to relax, be calm and concentrate on your study. This can come by mindfulness. You should have breaks between your study sessions. You can spend your weekend at a different place with cheerful people. Don't try to talk or hear about peoples' problems. Being mindful helps you to achieve great progress in your life. I hope you get better soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Shehab

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A good listener"

No one can deny that personal problems are a thing that anyone lives with. The most important thing is to learn from our mistakes and this cannot be achieved except by listening to other peoples' pieces of advice. Especially people who are older than us and had a lot of experiences in their lives. To be a good listener is a very important quality one should have. It is a skill, because you can choose who you listen to and what to be listened at. The intelligent person is the one who listens more than he talks. God has created us with one mouth but with two ears. This is a message sometimes people do not care about. This message means that we should listen more than talk. Listening is a very important teacher. Through it, we can find solutions to problems, do useful things and be successful. To conclude, we should listen to learn.

General Exercises on unit 6

"What we should do to be good listeners"

Talking is free but listening is gold ! Listening has many ways and shapes. We can listen to people, programmes, radios and books. To be a good listener, you should listen without interrupting the one who is talking and ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem which they face. You should also try to help them explain their feelings more clearly. On the other hand you shouldn't talk about something else when you listen to someone. Don't forget listening to mindful and educated people who are interested in your success and progress is golden. This can be found with different persons like your teachers, your parents and your friends. When you listen to them, of course many things will change at your life.

Glossary

المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى الوحدات
لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد من المفردات اللغوية)

Unit 1

lessons 1 & 2

weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
compare (d) (v)	يقارن
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء
machine (n)	آلة
carry (ied) (v)	يحمل

lessons 3 & 4

tomorrow	غدًا
later	فيما بعد
way (n)	طريقة
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن
photographs (n)	صور فوتوغرافية
nearest (adj)	الأقرب

lessons 5 & 6

phrase (n)	عبارة
partner (n)	شريك
clothes shop (n)	محل ملابس
book shop (n)	مكتبة (لبيع الكتب)
closed (adj)	مغلق
share (d) (v)	يشارك
enough	كاف
weekdays	عطلات ايام الأسبوع

Unit 2

lessons 1 & 2

right	
online	صحيح
café	عبر الإنترنت
	مقهى
home store	محل للأدوات المنزلية
decide(d)	يقرر
quickly	بسرعة
discuss (ed)	يناقش
difference	اختلاف
loudly	بصوت عالى
cost - cost - cost (v)	يتكلف
city centre	مركز المدينة

lessons 3 & 4

town centre	مركز المدينة
leaves	أوراق الشجر
look like	يشبه
pots	أوانى
hope (d) (v)	يأمل
below	أسفل
type	نوع
paint (ed)	يلون - يدهن
history	تاريخ
modern	حديث
amazing	رائع
plan (ned) (v) (n)	خطة / يخطط
imagine	يتخيل
congratulation	تهانينا - مبروك
ready	جاهز

lessons 5 & 6

still	لا يزال
wait (ed)	ينتظر
arrive (d) (v)	يصل
list	قائمة
delicious	لذيذ

main	رئيسى - أساسى
partner	شريك - زميل
excited	متحمس - متشوق
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية

Unit 3

lessons 1 & 2

sports activities	أنشطة رياضية
recent (adj)	حديث - مستجد
planned (adj)	مخطط
local area	منطقة محلية
soon (adv)	عاجلًا - قريبا
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
history museum	متحف التاريخ
website page (n)	صفحة موقع إليكترونى
improve (d) (v)	يحسن
interview (ed) (v) , (n)	يجرى مقابلة شخصية / مقابلة شخصية
everyone	كل واحد
girls' handball team	فريق كرة اليد للسيدات
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى

lessons 3 & 4

kindly (adv)	بلطف - بكرم
rest (n)	فترة الراحة - استراحة
repair (ed) (v) (n)	يصلح / إصلاح
historic (adj)	تاريخى
cover (ed) (v), (n)	يغطى - غطاء
note (ed) (v), (n)	يلاحظ - ملاحظة
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
metro ticket (n)	تذكرة مترو أنفاق
Lebanon	دولة لبنان
furniture (n)	أثاث منزلى
competition (n)	مسابقة
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
kind (adj)	طيب - عطوف
ill (adj)	مريض

lessons 5 & 6

add (ed) (v)	يضيف
need (ed) (v)	يحتاج
painting (n)	طلاء - دهان
complete (d) (v)	يكمل
reason (n)	سبب
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
warmly (adv)	بدفء
ending (n)	نهاية
beat (v)	يهزم
talk (ed), (v), (n)	يتحدث / حديث

Unit 4

lessons 1 & 2

fewer (adj)	أقل (عددًا)
marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
life (n)	حياة

lessons 3 & 4

handball club (n)	نادى كرة اليد
amazing (adj)	مدهش - مذهل
cat noise (n)	صوت قطة
chess club (n)	نادى شطرنج
sea animals (n)	حيوانات بحرية
metal (n)	معدن
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية

lessons 5 & 6

happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
take turns (phr.v)	يتبادل الأدوار
add (ed) (v)	يضيف
feel - felt - felt	يشعر
bear - bore - born	يُولد/يلد
become - became - become	يصبح
part (n)	جزء
scared (adj)	خائف
Greece	دولة اليونان

Unit 5

lessons 1 & 2

travel (led) (v)	يسافر
Nigeria (n)	دولة نيجيريا
Brazil (n)	دولة البرازيل
Africa (n)	قارة أفريقيا
receive (d) (v)	يستلم
real (adj)	حقيقي

lessons 3 & 4

timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
handball (n)	كرة اليد
newspaper (n)	جريدة - صحيفة
stadium (n)	استاد
cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة
advice (n)	نصيحة
nervous	عصبي
calm	هادئ
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا - حوالى

lessons 5 & 6

surprised (adj)	مندهش
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي
return (ed) (v)	يعود
get married (v)	يتزوج
still (adv)	لايزال
driving test	اختبار القيادة

Unit 6

lessons 1 & 2

try (ied)	يحاول
technology	تكنولوجيا
however	بالرغم من ذلك
change (d)	يغير - يتغير
even	حتى
necessary	ضروري
avoid (ed)	يتجنب
essential	أساسي - جوهري

lessons 3 & 4

funny	مضحك
badly	بشكل سيىء
carefully	بعناية
baker's	مخبز
imagine (d)	يتخيل
mention (ed)	يذكر
try (ied)	يحاول - يجرب
laugh (ed)	يضحك
angry	غاضب
UK	المملكة المتحدة
start (ed)	يشغل - يبدأ

lessons 5 & 6

else	أيضا - آخر
prize	جائزة
terrible	مريع - شنيع
near	قريب

End of Term Practice

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What is the speaker going to do today ?
   a. Take people to a nature reserve.
   b. Give directions to an information centre.
   c. Explain some facts about animals.
   d. Find some water for the visitors and birds.
2. How do they get to the information centre ?
   a. Turn left and go past an old building.
   b. Turn left and go right at an old building.
   c. Turn right and go past an old building.
   d. Turn right onto a big road.
3. What haven't they seen at the nature reserve this year ?
   a. Any birds b. Smaller birds c. Larger birds d. Any water
4. What must people take with them ?
   a. Food b. enough water c. Phones d. sun hats

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ziad and Adam are talking about their plans for the weekend.

Ziad : Hi, Adam. This is my older cousin, Hany.
Adam : (1) ..... , Hany. What are you doing next weekend ?
Ziad : We're going to the park. (2) ..... ?
Adam : I'm not sure about that. There are some boys in the park and ...
Ziad : (3) ..... It might be good to talk about it, you know.
Adam : (4) ..... .
Hany : Unkind comments ! That must have made you feel very sad.
Adam : (5) ..... But I told the officers at the park, and they talked to the boys about that.
Ziad : (6) ..... ?
Adam : The boys said sorry to me the next day. But I still don't want to go to the park.
Hany : You mustn't feel bad anymore. I'm sure they won't do it again.

3 Read the text, then answer the questions :

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past ? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called yellow fever. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.

We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms ! Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

1. What two problems do fridges cause ?

.....

2. Why do you think that places that sold meat started to have fridges by 1900?

.....

3. John Gorrie invented a machine that .....
   a. made people ill. b. made ice. c. kept food cool.
4. Modern fridges are going to .....
   a. make more noise. b. use less energy. c. look better.
5. What do you think the word efficient means ?
   a. expensive b. cheap c. work well and quickly

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We saw some beautiful trees in the ..... gardens.
   a. botanical b. passenger c. smart d. elderly
2. Fatima worked hard to clean the dirty water, and the ..... were amazing.
   a. competitions b. results c. teams d. organisers

3. The parents knew that the children were ..... because they heard them talking.
   a. awesome b. delicious c. awake d. sleeping

4. My grandmother is very ..... . She always knows how I feel.
   a. upset b. positive c. understanding d. embarrassed

5. Only Ali's cousin knew the way to the park, so we all ..... him there.
   a. took b. went c. got d. followed

6. We ..... take the bus to the museum, we could take a tram or a train, too.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. might not

7. You don't have to buy any bread today because I ..... some.
   a. bought already b. have already bought
   c. have yet bought d. yet bought

8. I like ..... the blue shirt and the green shirt. Which should I buy ?
   a. either b. both c. neither d. nor

9. I was very ..... to see my cousin this morning because I thought she was in Jordan !
   a. surprise b. surprising c. surprised d. surprises

10. The first bus to the museum ..... at 9.30 am every day.
    a. is leaving b. leave c. leaves d. leaving

5 Read and correct the underlined words.

1. The work that the volunteers do can really **do** a difference to our community. .....
2. People were surprised by the **kind** of Mr Nader. He helps everybody he knows. .....
3. My parents have lived in the same house **when** 2012. .....
4. The computer isn't working because it is not plugged **on** ! .....

6 Choose one of the following. Write about 100 words.

- Write an article on some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like.
- Write an email to a friend suggesting how you could help your community.

مسابقة

لتدخل السحب
وتفوز بنسخة من :

EL-MONASSER

in

English

3rd Prep. / Second Term

املأ هذا البون بخط واضح وأرسله مع ورقة أسئلة الامتحان إلى العنوان التالى :

مكتبة الطلبة للطبع والنشر والتوزيع — الفجالة - القاهرة — ص.ب ٩٨ — رمز بريدى ١١٥٢٣

محافظة : ..... إدارة : .....

مدرسة : .....

اسم الطالب : .....

العنوان الشخصى : .....

الرقم البريدى : .....

التليفون الشخصى : .....

البريد الإلكترونى : .....

اسم مدرس المادة : ..... التليفون : .....

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٣ - ١١ - ٢ - ١٠

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

New Hello!

FIRST TERM

IN THIS BO

- A detailed explanation for each two lessons.
- Various exercises on each part of the two lessons.
- General exercises on each two lessons.
- A brief summary on each unit.
- Project worksheets.
- Writing skill.
- Self-assessment activity.
- General exercises after each unit.
- General revision after each three units.

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر
في الرياضيات
للمرحلة الإعدادية

معاك
MaAk App

• أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود على ظهر الغلاف
• لمزيد من المعلومات انظر صفحتي ٤، ٥

يصرف مجاناً مع هذا الكتاب
• ملحق Master your Term
• ملحق Master your language
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Master Your Term
الحل الأمثل للتعامل مع المنهج

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

6 223007 310178

/ ElMoasser.eg